

tagpdf – L^AT_EX kernel code for PDF tagging*

Ulrike Fischer[†]

Released 2025-06-27

Contents

I	The tagpdf main module	
	Part of the tagpdf package	7
1	Initialization and test if pdfmanagement is active.	8
2	base package	8
3	Package options	9
4	Packages	9
	4.1 a LastPage label	9
5	Variables	9
6	Variants of l3 commands	11
7	Label and Reference commands	11
8	Setup label attributes	12
9	Commands to fill seq and prop	13
10	General tagging commands	13
11	Keys for tagpdfsetup	15
12	loading of engine/more dependent code	16
II	The tagpdf-checks module	
	Messages and check code	
	Part of the tagpdf package	17
1	Commands	17

*This file describes v0.99s, last revised 2025-06-27.

[†]E-mail: fischer@troubleshooting-tex.de

2	Description of log messages	17
2.1	\ShowTagging command	17
2.2	Messages in checks and commands	18
2.3	Messages from the ptagging code	18
2.4	Warning messages from the lua-code	18
2.5	Info messages from the lua-code	18
2.6	Debug mode messages and code	19
2.7	Messages	19
3	Messages	21
3.1	Messages related to mc-chunks	21
3.2	Messages related to structures	22
3.3	Attributes	24
3.4	Roles	24
3.5	Miscellaneous	28
4	Retrieving data	28
5	User conditionals	28
6	Internal checks	29
6.1	checks for active tagging	29
6.2	Checks related to structures	30
6.3	Checks related to roles	31
6.4	Check related to mc-chunks	32
6.5	Checks related to the state of MC on a page or in a split stream	35
6.6	Benchmarks	38
III The tagpdf-user module		
Code related to L^AT_EX₂ε user commands and document commands		
Part of the tagpdf package		39
1	Setup commands	39
2	Commands related to mc-chunks	39
3	Commands related to structures	40
4	Debugging	40
5	Extension commands	41
5.1	Fake space	41
5.2	Tagging of paragraphs	41
5.3	Header and footer	42
5.4	Link tagging	42
6	Socket support	42
7	User commands and extensions of document commands	43

8	Setup and preamble commands	43
9	Commands for the mc-chunks	44
10	Commands for the structure	44
11	Socket support	45
12	Debugging	46
13	Commands to extend document commands	50
13.1	Document structure	50
13.2	Structure destinations	50
13.3	Fake space	51
13.4	Paratagging	51
13.5	output routine stuff	57
13.6	Language support	58
13.7	Header and footer	58
13.8	Links	62
13.9	Attaching css-files for derivation	66

IV The tagpdf-tree module
Commands trees and main dictionaries
Part of the tagpdf package **68**

1	Trees, pdfmanagement and finalization code	68
1.1	Check structure	68
1.2	Catalog: MarkInfo and StructTreeRoot and OpenAction	69
1.3	Writing the IDtree	70
1.4	Writing structure elements	71
1.5	ParentTree	72
1.6	Rolemap dictionary	75
1.7	Classmap dictionary	76
1.8	Namespaces	76
1.9	Finishing the structure	77
1.10	StructParents entry for Page	78

V The tagpdf-mc-shared module
Code related to Marked Content (mc-chunks), code shared by
all modes
Part of the tagpdf package **79**

1	Public Commands	79
2	Public keys	80

3	Marked content code – shared	81
3.1	Variables and counters	81
3.2	Functions	82
3.3	Keys	86
VI	The tagpdf-mc-generic module	
	Code related to Marked Content (mc-chunks), generic mode	
	Part of the tagpdf package	88
1	Marked content code – generic mode	88
1.1	Variables	88
1.2	Functions	89
1.3	Looking at MC marks in boxes	92
1.4	Keys	99
VII	The tagpdf-mc-luacode module	
	Code related to Marked Content (mc-chunks), luamode-specific	
	Part of the tagpdf package	101
1	Marked content code – luamode code	101
1.1	Commands	103
1.2	Key definitions	107
VIII	The tagpdf-struct module	
	Commands to create the structure	
	Part of the tagpdf package	110
1	Public Commands	110
2	Public keys	111
2.1	Keys for the structure commands	111
2.2	Setup keys	113
3	Variables	113
3.1	Variables used by the keys	116
3.2	Variables used by tagging code of basic elements	116
4	Commands	117
4.1	Initialization of the StructTreeRoot	118
4.2	Adding the /ID key	119
4.3	Filling in the tag info	119
4.4	Handlings kids	120
4.5	Output of the object	125
4.6	Commands for the parent-child checks	129
5	Keys	132
6	User commands	141

7	Attributes and attribute classes	149
7.1	Variables	150
7.2	Commands and keys	150
IX	The tagpdf-luatex.def	
	Driver for luatex	
	Part of the tagpdf package	153
1	Loading the lua	153
2	User commands to access data	157
3	Logging functions	158
4	Helper functions	160
4.1	Retrieve data functions	160
4.2	Functions to insert the pdf literals	162
5	Function for the real space chars	165
6	Function for the tagging	168
7	Parenttree	173
8	parent-child rules	175
9	Link annotations	178
X	The tagpdf-roles module	
	Tags, roles and namespace code	
	Part of the tagpdf package	179
1	Code related to roles and structure names	179
1.1	Variables	180
1.2	Namespaces	182
1.3	Adding a new tag	183
1.3.1	pdf 1.7 and earlier	184
1.3.2	The pdf 2.0 version	186
1.4	Helper command to read the data from files	188
1.5	Reading the default data	190
1.6	Parent-child rules	191
1.6.1	Reading in the csv-files	192
1.6.2	Retrieving the parent-child rule	194
1.7	Key-val user interface	199
XI	The tagpdf-space module	
	Code related to real space chars	
	Part of the tagpdf package	202

1	Code for interword spaces	202
	Index	206

Part I

The tagpdf main module

Part of the tagpdf package

<code>\tag_suspend:n</code>	<code>\tag_suspend:n {⟨label⟩}</code>
<code>\tag_resume:n</code>	<code>\tag_resume:n {⟨label⟩}</code>
<code>\tag_stop:n</code>	<code>\tag_stop:n {⟨label⟩}</code> (<i>deprecated</i>)
<code>\tag_start:n</code>	<code>\tag_start:n {⟨label⟩}</code> (<i>deprecated</i>)

We need commands to stop tagging in some places. They switches three local booleans and also stop the counting of paragraphs. If they are nested an inner `\tag_resume:n` will not restart tagging. `⟨label⟩` is only used in debugging messages to allow to follow the nesting and to identify which code is disabling the tagging. The label is not expanded so can be a single token, e.g. `\caption`. `\tag_suspend:n` and `\tag_resume:n` are the l3-layer variants of `\SuspendTagging` and `\ResumeTagging` and will be provided by the kernel in the next release.

<code>\tag_stop:</code>	<i>deprecated</i> These are variants of the above commands without the debugging level. They
<code>\tag_start:</code>	are now deprecated and it is recommended to use the kernel command <code>\SuspendTagging</code> ,
<code>\tagstop</code>	<code>\ResumeTagging</code> , <code>\tag_suspend:n</code> and <code>\tag_resume:n</code> instead.
<code>\tagstart</code>	

`activate/spaces` (*setup key*) `activate/spaces` activates the additional parsing needed for interword spaces. It replaces the deprecated key `interwordspace`.

`activate/mc` (*setup key*) A key to to activate the marked content code. It should be used only in special cases, e.g. for debugging.

`activate-mc` (*deprecated*) (*setup key*)

`activate/tree` (*setup key*) This key activates the code that finalize the various trees. It should be used only in special cases, e.g. for debugging.

`activate-tree` (*deprecated*) (*setup key*)

`activate/struct` (*setup key*) This key activates the code for structures. It should be used only in special cases, e.g. for debugging.

`activate-struct` (*deprecated*) (*setup key*)

`activate/all` (*setup key*) This is a meta key for the three previous keys and is normally what should be used to activate tagging.

`activate-all` (*deprecated*) (*setup key*)

`activate/struct-dest` (*setup key*) The key allows to suppress the creation of structure destinations

`activate-struct-dest` (*deprecated*) (*setup key*)

`debug/log` (*setup key*) The `debug/log` key takes currently the values `none`, `v`, `vv`, `vvv`, `all`. More details are in `tagpdf-checks`.

`activate/tagunmarked` (*setup key*) This key allows to set if (in luamode) unmarked text should be marked up as artifact.

`activate-tagunmarked` (*deprecated*) (*setup key*) The initial value is true.

`activate/softhyphen` (*setup key*) This key allows to activates automatic handling of hyphens inserted by hyphenation. It only is used in luamode and replaces hyphens by U+00AD if the font supports this.

`page/tabsorder` (*setup key*) This sets the tabsorder on a page. The values are `row`, `column`, `structure` (default) or `none`. Currently this is set more or less globally. More finer control can be added if needed.

<code>tagstruct</code> <code>tagstructobj</code> <code>tagabspage</code> <code>tagmcabs</code> <code>tagmcid</code>	These are attributes used by the label/ref system.
---	--

1 Initialization and test if pdfmanagement is active.

```

1 <@@=tag>
2 <*package>
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf} {2025-06-27} {0.99s}
4   { LaTeX kernel code for PDF tagging }
5
6 \IfPDFManagementActiveF
7   {
8     \PackageError{tagpdf}
9     {
10      PDF-resource-management-is-no-active!\MessageBreak
11      tagpdf-will-no-work.
12    }
13    {
14      Activate-it-with \MessageBreak
15      \string\DocumentMetadata{<options>}\MessageBreak
16      before~\string\documentclass
17    }
18  }
19 </package>
<*debug>
20 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-debug} {2025-06-27} {0.99s}
21   { debug code for tagpdf }
22 \@ifpackageloaded{tagpdf}{\PackageWarning{tagpdf-debug}{tagpdf~not~loaded,~quitting}\ending}{}
</debug> We map the internal module name “tag” to “tagpdf” in messages.
23 <*package>
24 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_msg_module_name_prop { tag }{ tagpdf }
25 </package>

```

Debug mode has its special mapping:

```

26 <*debug>
27 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_msg_module_type_prop { tag / debug } {}
28 \prop_gput:Nnn \g_msg_module_name_prop { tag / debug }{tagpdf~DEBUG}
29 </debug>

```

2 base package

To avoid to have to test everywhere if tagpdf has been loaded and is active, we define a base package with dummy functions

```

30 <*base>

```



```

31 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-base} {2025-06-27} {0.99s}
32 {part of tagpdf - provide base, no-op versions of the user commands }
33 </base>

```

3 Package options

The boolean is kept for now for compatibility, can go in 2026.

```

34 <*package>
35 \bool_new:N\g__tag_mode_lua_bool
36 \sys_if_engine luatex:T {\bool_gset_true:N \g__tag_mode_lua_bool}
37 \DeclareOption {luamode} { }
38 \DeclareOption {genericmode}{ }
39 \ProcessOptions

```

4 Packages

To be on the safe side for now, load also the base definitions

```

40 \RequirePackage{tagpdf-base}
41 </package>

```

The no-op version should behave as near enough to the real code as possible, so we define a command which is a special in the relevant backends:

```

42 <*base>
43 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_whatsits: {}
44 \AddToHook{begin:document}
45 {
46   \str_case:onF { \c_sys_backend_str }
47   {
48     { luatex } { \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_whatsits: {} }
49     { dvisvgm } { \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_whatsits: {} }
50   }
51   {
52     \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_whatsits: {\tex_special:D {} }
53   }
54 }
55 </base>

```

4.1 a LastPage label

With LaTeX 2025-06-01 we no longer need a special version as the label is now written directly.

```

56 <*package>
57 \AddToHook{end:document/afterlastpage}
58 {\property_record:nn{@tag@LastPage}{abspage,tagmcabs,tagstruct}}

```

5 Variables

A few temporary variables

```

\l__tag_tmpa_tl
\l__tag_tmpb_tl
\l__tag_tmpc_tl
\l__tag_tmp_unused_tl \l__tag_Ref_tmpa_tl
\l__tag_get_tmpc_tl
\l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl
\l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl
\l__tag_get_parent_tmpc_tl
\l__tag_get_child_tmpa_tl
\l__tag_get_child_tmpb_tl
\l__tag_get_child_tmpc_tl
\l__tag_tmpa_str
\l__tag_tmpa_prop

```

```

61 \tl_new:N \l__tag_tmpc_tl
62 \tl_new:N \l__tag_tmp_unused_tl
63 \tl_new:N \l__tag_Ref_tmpa_tl
64 \tl_new:N \l__tag_get_tmpc_tl
65 \tl_new:N \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl
66 \tl_new:N \l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl
67 \tl_new:N \l__tag_get_parent_tmpc_tl
68 \tl_new:N \l__tag_get_child_tmpa_tl
69 \tl_new:N \l__tag_get_child_tmpb_tl
70 \tl_new:N \l__tag_get_child_tmpc_tl
71 \str_new:N \l__tag_tmpa_str
72 \prop_new:N \l__tag_tmpa_prop
73 \seq_new:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq
74 \seq_new:N \l__tag_tmpb_seq
75 \clist_new:N \l__tag_tmpa_clist
76 \int_new:N \l__tag_tmpa_int
77 \box_new:N \l__tag_tmpa_box
78 \box_new:N \l__tag_tmpb_box

```

(End of definition for \l__tag_tmpa_tl and others.)

Attribute lists for the label command. We have a list for mc-related labels, and one for structures.

```

\c__tag_property_mc_clist
\c__tag_property_struct_clist
79 \clist_const:Nn \c__tag_property_mc_clist {tagabspage,tagmcabs,tagmcid}
80 \clist_const:Nn \c__tag_property_struct_clist {tagstruct,tagstructobj}

```

(End of definition for \c__tag_property_mc_clist and \c__tag_property_struct_clist.)

`\l__tag_loglevel_int` This integer hold the log-level and so allows to control the messages. TODO: a list which log-level shows what is needed. The current behaviour is quite ad-hoc.

```
81 \int_new:N \l__tag_loglevel_int
```

(End of definition for \l__tag_loglevel_int.)

`\g__tag_active_space_bool` `\g__tag_active_mc_bool` `\g__tag_active_tree_bool` `\g__tag_active_struct_bool` `\g__tag_active_struct_dest_bool` These booleans should help to control the global behaviour of tagpdf. Ideally it should more or less do nothing if all are false. The space-boolean controls the interword space code, the mc-boolean activates `\tag_mc_begin:n`, the tree-boolean activates writing the finish code and the pdfmanagement related commands, the struct-boolean activates the storing of the structure data. In a normal document all should be active, the split is only there for debugging purpose. Structure destination will be activated automatically, but with the boolean struct-dest-boolean one can suppress them. Also we assume currently that they are set only at begin document. But if some control passing over groups are needed they could be perhaps used in a document too. TODO: check if they are used everywhere as needed and as wanted.

```

82 \bool_new:N \g__tag_active_space_bool
83 \bool_new:N \g__tag_active_mc_bool
84 \bool_new:N \g__tag_active_tree_bool
85 \bool_new:N \g__tag_active_struct_bool
86 \bool_new:N \g__tag_active_struct_dest_bool
87 \bool_gset_true:N \g__tag_active_struct_dest_bool

```

(End of definition for \g__tag_active_space_bool and others.)

`\l__tag_active_mc_bool` These booleans should help to control the *local* behaviour of tagpdf. In some cases it could e.g. be necessary to stop tagging completely. As local booleans they respect groups.

`\l__tag_active_struct_bool` TODO: check if they are used everywhere as needed and as wanted.

`\l__tag_active_socket_bool`

```

88 \bool_new:N \l__tag_active_mc_bool
89 \bool_set_true:N \l__tag_active_mc_bool
90 \bool_new:N \l__tag_active_struct_bool
91 \bool_set_true:N \l__tag_active_struct_bool
92 \bool_new:N \l__tag_active_socket_bool

```

(End of definition for `\l__tag_active_mc_bool`, `\l__tag_active_struct_bool`, and `\l__tag_active_socket_bool`.)

`\g__tag_tagunmarked_bool` This boolean controls if the code should try to automatically tag parts not in mc-chunk. It is currently only used in luamode. It would be possible to use it in generic mode, but this would create quite a lot empty artifact mc-chunks.

```

93 \bool_new:N \g__tag_tagunmarked_bool

```

(End of definition for `\g__tag_tagunmarked_bool`.)

`\g__tag_softhyphen_bool` This boolean controls if the code should try to automatically handle hyphens from hyphenation. It is currently only used in luamode.

```

94 \bool_new:N \g__tag_softhyphen_bool

```

(End of definition for `\g__tag_softhyphen_bool`.)

`\g__tag_unique_cnt_int` If tagpdf has to create unique names (e.g. for object names when embedding files) it can use this integer to get an unique name. At every use it should be increased

```

95 \int_new:N \g__tag_unique_cnt_int

```

(End of definition for `\g__tag_unique_cnt_int`.)

6 Variants of l3 commands

```

96 \prg_generate_conditional_variant:Nnn \pdf_object_if_exist:n {e}{T,F,TF}
97 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \pdf_object_ref:n {e}
98 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \pdfannot_dict_put:nnn {nne}
99 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \pdffile_embed_stream:nnn {nee,oe}
100 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_gput:Nnn {Nee,Nen} %** unneeded
101 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_put:Nnn {Nee} %** unneeded
102 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_item:Nn {No,Ne} %** unneeded
103 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_set_split:Nnn{Nno}
104 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \str_set_convert:Nnnn {Nnonn, Noon, Nnon }
105 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \clist_map_inline:nn {on}
106 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \pdffile_embed_file:nnn {eee}

```

7 Label and Reference commands

The code uses mostly the kernel properties but need a few local variants.

`__tag_property_record:nn` The command to record a property while preserving the spaces similar to the standard `\label`.

```

107 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_property_record:nn #1#2
108 {
109   \@bsphack
110   \property_record:nn{#1}{#2}
111   \@esphack
112 }
113

```

And a few variants

```

114 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \property_ref:nnn {enn}
115 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \property_ref:nn {en}
116 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_property_record:nn {en,eo}

```

(End of definition for `__tag_property_record:nn`.)

`__tag_property_ref_lastpage:nn` A command to retrieve the lastpage label, this will be adapted when there is a proper, kernel lastpage label.

```

117 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_property_ref_lastpage:nn #1 #2
118 {
119   \property_ref:nnn {@tag@LastPage}{#1}{#2}
120 }

```

(End of definition for `__tag_property_ref_lastpage:nn`.)

8 Setup label attributes

`tagstruct` This are attributes used by the label/ref system. With structures we store the structure number `tagstruct` and the object reference `tagstructobj`. The second is needed to be able to reference a structure which hasn't been created yet. The alternative would be to create the object in such cases, but then we would have to check the object existence all the time.

With mc-chunks we store the absolute page number `tagabspage`, the absolute id `tagmcbc`, and the id on the page `tagmclid`.

```

121 \property_new:nnnn
122 { tagstruct } { now }
123 {1} { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
124 \property_new:nnnn { tagstructobj } { now } {}
125 {
126   \pdf_object_ref_indexed:nn { __tag/struct } { \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
127 }
128 \property_new:nnnn
129 { tagabspage } { shipout }
130 {0} { \int_use:N \g_shipout_readonly_int }
131 \property_new:nnnn { tagmcbc } { now }
132 {0} { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int }
133
134 \flag_new:n { __tag/mclid }
135 \property_new:nnnn {tagmclid} { shipout }
136 {0} { \flag_height:n { __tag/mclid } }
137

```

(End of definition for `tagstruct` and others. These functions are documented on page 8.)

9 Commands to fill seq and prop

With most engines these are simply copies of the expl3 commands, but luatex will overwrite them, to store the data also in lua tables.

```

    \__tag_prop_new:N
\__tag_prop_new_linked:N 138 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_prop_new:N \prop_new:N
    \__tag_seq_new:N      139 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_prop_new_linked:N \prop_new_linked:N
\__tag_prop_gput:Nnn      140 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_seq_new:N \seq_new:N
\__tag_seq_gput_right:Nn 141 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_prop_gput:Nnn \prop_gput:Nnn
    \__tag_seq_item:cn    142 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_seq_gput_right:Nn \seq_gput_right:Nn
\__tag_prop_item:cn      143 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_seq_gput_left:Nn \seq_gput_left:Nn
    \__tag_seq_show:N     144 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_seq_item:cn \seq_item:cn
\__tag_prop_show:N      145 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_prop_item:cn \prop_item:cn
    \__tag_prop_show:N     146 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_seq_show:N \seq_show:N
    \__tag_prop_show:N     147 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_prop_show:N \prop_show:N
148 % cnx temporary needed for latex-lab-graphic code
149 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_prop_gput:Nnn { Nen, Nee, Nne, Nno, cnn, cen, cne, cno, c }
150 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_seq_gput_right:Nn { Ne , No, cn, ce }
151 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_seq_gput_left:Nn { ce }
152 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_prop_new:N { c }
153 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_seq_new:N { c }
154 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_seq_show:N { c }
155 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_prop_show:N { c }
156 </package>

```

(End of definition for `__tag_prop_new:N` and others.)

10 General tagging commands

`\tag_suspend:n` We need commands to stop tagging in some places. They switch local booleans and also stop the counting of paragraphs. The commands keep track of the nesting with a local counter. Tagging only is only restarted at the outer level, if the current level is 1. The `\tag_start:` commands with argument allow to give a label. This is only used in debugging messages to allow to follow the nesting. The label is not expand so can e.g. be a single command token.

When stop/start pairs are nested we do not want the inner start command to restart tagging. To control this we use a local int: The stop command will increase it. The starting will decrease it and only restart tagging, if it is zero. This will replace the label version.

```

157 <*package | debug>
158 <package>\int_new:N \l__tag_tag_stop_int
\l__tag_tag_stop_int
159 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_stop:
160 {
161 <debug> \msg_note:nne {tag / debug }{tag-suspend}{ \int_use:N \l__tag_tag_stop_int }
162 \int_incr:N \l__tag_tag_stop_int
163 \bool_set_false:N \l__tag_active_struct_bool
164 \bool_set_false:N \l__tag_active_mc_bool
165 \bool_set_false:N \l__tag_active_socket_bool
166 \__tag_stop_para_ints:
167 }

```

```

168 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_start:
169 {
170   \int_if_zero:nF { \l__tag_tag_stop_int } { \int_decr:N \l__tag_tag_stop_int }
171   \int_if_zero:nT { \l__tag_tag_stop_int }
172   {
173     \bool_set_true:N \l__tag_active_struct_bool
174     \bool_set_true:N \l__tag_active_mc_bool
175     \bool_set_true:N \l__tag_active_socket_bool
176     \__tag_start_para_ints:
177   }
178 <debug>   \msg_note:nne {tag / debug }{tag-resume}{ \int_use:N \l__tag_tag_stop_int }
179 }
180 \cs_set_eq:NN\tagstop\tag_stop:
181 \cs_set_eq:NN\tagstart\tag_start:
182 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_suspend:n #1
183 {
184 <debug>   \msg_note:nnee {tag / debug }{tag-suspend}
185 <debug>   { \int_use:N \l__tag_tag_stop_int }{\exp_not:n{#1}}
186   \int_incr:N \l__tag_tag_stop_int
187   \bool_set_false:N \l__tag_active_struct_bool
188   \bool_set_false:N \l__tag_active_mc_bool
189   \bool_set_false:N \l__tag_active_socket_bool
190   \__tag_stop_para_ints:
191 }
192 \cs_set_eq:NN \tag_stop:n \tag_suspend:n
193 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_resume:n #1
194 {
195   \int_if_zero:nF { \l__tag_tag_stop_int } { \int_decr:N \l__tag_tag_stop_int }
196   \int_if_zero:nT { \l__tag_tag_stop_int }
197   {
198     \bool_set_true:N \l__tag_active_struct_bool
199     \bool_set_true:N \l__tag_active_mc_bool
200     \bool_set_true:N \l__tag_active_socket_bool
201     \__tag_start_para_ints:
202   }
203 <debug>   \msg_note:nnee {tag / debug }{tag-resume}
204 <debug>   { \int_use:N \l__tag_tag_stop_int }{\exp_not:n{#1}}
205 }
206 \cs_set_eq:NN \tag_start:n \tag_resume:n
207 </package | debug>
208 <*base>
209 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_stop:{}
210 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_start:{}
211 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tagstop{}
212 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tagstart{}
213 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_stop:n #1 {}
214 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_start:n #1 {}

```

Until the commands are provided by the kernel we provide them here too

```

215 \cs_set_eq:NN \tag_suspend:n \tag_stop:n
216 \cs_set_eq:NN \tag_resume:n \tag_start:n
217 </base>

```

(End of definition for \tag_suspend:n and others. These functions are documented on page 7.)

11 Keys for tagpdfsetup

TODO: the log-levels must be sorted

`activate/mc` (*setup key*) Keys to (globally) activate tagging. `activate/spaces` activates the additional parsing needed for interword spaces. It is defined in `tagpdf-space`. `activate/struct-dest` allows to activate or suppress structure destinations.

```

218 <*package>
219 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
220 {
221   activate/mc      .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_active_mc_bool,
222   activate/tree    .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_active_tree_bool,
223   activate/struct .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_active_struct_bool,
224   activate/all     .meta:n =
225     {activate/mc={#1},activate/tree={#1},activate/struct={#1}},
226   activate/all     .default:n = true,
227   activate/struct-dest .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_active_struct_dest_bool,

```

old, deprecated names

```

228   activate-mc      .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_active_mc_bool,
229   activate-tree    .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_active_tree_bool,
230   activate-struct .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_active_struct_bool,
231   activate-all     .meta:n =
232     {activate/mc={#1},activate/tree={#1},activate/struct={#1}},
233   activate-all     .default:n = true,
234   no-struct-dest .bool_gset_inverse:N = \g__tag_active_struct_dest_bool,

```

`debug/show` (*setup key*) Subkeys/values are defined in various other places.

```

235   debug/show      .choice:,

```

`debug/log` (*setup key*) The log takes currently the values `none`, `v`, `vv`, `vvv`, `all`. The description of the log levels is in `tagpdf-checks`.

```

236   debug/log      .choice:,
237   debug/log / none .code:n = {\int_set:Nn \l__tag_loglevel_int { 0 }},
238   debug/log / v   .code:n =
239     {
240       \int_set:Nn \l__tag_loglevel_int { 1 }
241       \cs_set_protected:Nn \__tag_check_typeout_v:n { \iow_term:e {##1} }
242     },
243   debug/log / vv   .code:n = {\int_set:Nn \l__tag_loglevel_int { 2 }},
244   debug/log / vvv .code:n = {\int_set:Nn \l__tag_loglevel_int { 3 }},
245   debug/log / all  .code:n = {\int_set:Nn \l__tag_loglevel_int { 10 }},
246   debug/uncompress .code:n = { \pdf_uncompress: },

```

deprecated but still needed as the `documentmetadata` key argument uses it.

```

247   log      .meta:n = {debug/log={#1}},
248   uncompress .code:n = { \pdf_uncompress: },

```

`activate/tagunmarked` (*setup key*) This key allows to set if (in `luamode`) unmarked text should be marked up as artifact.

`unmarked` (*deprecated*) (*setup key*) The initial value is `true`.

```

249   activate/tagunmarked .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_tagunmarked_bool,
250   activate/tagunmarked .initial:n = true,

```

deprecated name

```

251   tagunmarked .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_tagunmarked_bool,

```

`activate/softhyphen` (*setup key*) This key activates (in luamode) the handling of soft hyphens.

```
252 activate/softhyphen .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_softhyphen_bool,  
253 activate/softhyphen .initial:n = true,
```

`page/tabsorder` (*setup key*) This sets the tabsorder on a page. The values are `row`, `column`, `structure` (default) or `none`. Currently this is set more or less globally. More finer control can be added if needed.

```
254 page/tabsorder .choice:,  
255 page/tabsorder / row .code:n =  
256 \pdfmanagement_add:nnn { Page } {Tabs}{/R},  
257 page/tabsorder / column .code:n =  
258 \pdfmanagement_add:nnn { Page } {Tabs}{/C},  
259 page/tabsorder / structure .code:n =  
260 \pdfmanagement_add:nnn { Page } {Tabs}{/S},  
261 page/tabsorder / none .code:n =  
262 \pdfmanagement_remove:nn {Page} {Tabs},  
263 page/tabsorder .initial:n = structure,
```

deprecated name

```
264 tabsorder .meta:n = {page/tabsorder={#1}},  
265 }
```

12 loading of engine/more dependent code

```
266 \sys_if_engine luatex:T  
267 {  
268 \file_input:n {tagpdf-luatex.def}  
269 }  
270 </package>  
  
271 <*mcloding>  
272 \bool_if:NTF \g__tag_mode_lua_bool  
273 {  
274 \RequirePackage {tagpdf-mc-code-lua}  
275 }  
276 {  
277 \RequirePackage {tagpdf-mc-code-generic} %  
278 }  
279 </mcloding>  
280 <*debug>  
281 \bool_if:NTF \g__tag_mode_lua_bool  
282 {  
283 \RequirePackage {tagpdf-debug-lua}  
284 }  
285 {  
286 \RequirePackage {tagpdf-debug-generic} %  
287 }  
288 </debug>
```


Part II

The tagpdf-checks module

Messages and check code

Part of the tagpdf package

1 Commands

`\tag_if_active_p:` * This command tests if tagging is active. It only gives true if all tagging has been activated, `\tag_if_active:TF` * *and* if tagging hasn't been stopped locally.

`\tag_get:n` * `\tag_get:n <{keyword}>`

This is a generic command to retrieve data for the current structure or mc-chunk. Currently the only sensible values for the argument `<keyword>` are `mc_tag`, `struct_tag`, `struct_id` and `struct_num`.

`\tag_if_box_tagged_p:N` * `\tag_if_box_tagged:NTF <box> <{true code}> <{false code}>`

`\tag_if_box_tagged:NTF` * This tests if a box contains tagging commands. It relies currently on that the code, that saved the box, correctly sets the command `\l_tag_box_int_use:N #1_t1` to a positive value. The LaTeX commands will do that automatically at some time but it is in the responsibility of the user to ensure that when using low-level code. If the internal command doesn't exist the box is assumed to be untagged.

2 Description of log messages

2.1 `\ShowTagging` command

Argument	type	note
<code>\ShowTaggingmc-data = num</code>	log+term	lua-only
<code>\ShowTaggingmc-current</code>	log+term	
<code>\ShowTaggingstruck-stack= [log|show]</code>	log or term+stop	
<code>\ShowTaggingdebug/structures = num</code>	log+termn	debug mode only

2.2 Messages in checks and commands

command	message	action
\@@_check_structure_has_tag:n	struct-missing-tag	error
\@@_check_structure_tag:N	role-unknown-tag	warning
\@@_check_info_closing_struct:n	struct-show-closing	info
\@@_check_no_open_struct:	struct-faulty-nesting	error
\@@_check_struct_used:n	struct-used-twice	warning
\@@_check_add_tag_role:nn	role-missing, role-tag, role-unknown	warning, info (>0), warning
\@@_check_mc_if_nested:,	mc-nested	warning
\@@_check_mc_if_open:	mc-not-open	warning
\@@_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn	mc-pushed, mc-popped	info (2), info+seq_log (>2)
\@@_check_mc_tag:N	mc-tag-missing, role-unknown-tag	error (missing), warning (unknown).
\@@_check_mc_used:n	mc-used-twice	warning
\@@_check_show_MCID_by_page:		
\tag_mc_use:n	mc-label-unknown, mc-used-twice	warning
\role_add_tag:nn	new-tag	info (>0)
	sys-no-interwordspace	warning
\@@_struct_write_obj:n	struct-no-objnum	error
\@@_struct_write_obj:n	struct-orphan	warning
\tag_struct_begin:n	struct-faulty-nesting	error
\@@_struct_insert_annot:nn	struct-faulty-nesting	error
tag_struct_use:n	struct-label-unknown	warning
attribute-class, attribute	attr-unknown	error
\@@_tree_fill_parenttree:	tree-mcid-index-wrong	warning TODO: should trigger a standard rerun m
in enddocument/info-hook	para-hook-count-wrong	error (warning?)

2.3 Messages from the ptagging code

A few messages are issued in generic mode from the code which reinserts missing TMB/TME. This is currently done if log-level is larger than zero. TODO: reconsider log-level and messages when this code settles down.

2.4 Warning messages from the lua-code

The messages are triggered if the log-level is at least equal to the number.

message	log-level	remark
WARN TAG-NOT-TAGGED:	1	
WARN TAG-OPEN-MC:	1	
WARN SHIPOUT-MC-OPEN:	1	
WARN SHIPOUT-UPS:	0	shouldn't happen
WARN TEX-MC-INSERT-MISSING:	0	shouldn't happen
WARN TEX-MC-INSERT-NO-KIDS:	2	e.g. from empty hbox

2.5 Info messages from the lua-code

The messages are triggered if the log-level is at least equal to the number. TAG messages are from the traversing function, TEX from code used in the tagpdf-mc module. PARENTREE is the code building the parenttree.

message	log-level	remark
INFO SHIPOUT-INSERT-LAST-EMC	3	finish of shipout code
INFO SPACE-FUNCTION-FONT	3	interwordspace code
INFO TAG-ABSPAGE	3	
INFO TAG-ARGS	4	
INFO TAG-ENDHEAD	4	
INFO TAG-ENDHEAD	4	
INFO TAG-HEAD	3	
INFO TAG-INSERT-ARTIFACT	3	

message	log-level	remark
INFO TAG-INSERT-BDC	3	
INFO TAG-INSERT-EMC	3	
INFO TAG-INSERT-TAG	3	
INFO TAG-KERN-SUBTYPE	4	
INFO TAG-MATH-SUBTYPE	4	
INFO TAG-MC-COMPARE	4	
INFO TAG-MC-INTO-PAGE	3	
INFO TAG-NEW-MC-NODE	4	
INFO TAG-NODE	3	
INFO TAG-NO-HEAD	3	
INFO TAG-NOT-TAGGED	2	replaced by artifact
INFO TAG-QUITTING-BOX	4	
INFO TAG-STORE-MC-KID	4	
INFO TAG-TRAVERSING-BOX	3	
INFO TAG-USE-ACTUALTEXT	3	
INFO TAG-USE-ALT	3	
INFO TAG-USE-RAW	3	
INFO TEX-MC-INSERT-KID	3	
INFO TEX-MC-INSERT-KID-TEST	4	
INFO TEX-MC-INTO-STRUCT	3	
INFO TEX-STORE-MC-DATA	3	
INFO TEX-STORE-MC-KID	3	
INFO PARENTTREE-CHUNKS	3	
INFO PARENTTREE-NO-DATA	3	
INFO PARENTTREE-NUM	3	
INFO PARENTTREE-NUMENTRY	3	
INFO PARENTTREE-STRUCT-OBJREF	4	

2.6 Debug mode messages and code

If the package tagpdf-debug is loaded a number of commands are redefined and enhanced with additional commands which can be used to output debug messages or collect statistics. The commands are present but do nothing if the log-level is zero.

command	name	action	remark
<code>\tag_mc_begin:n</code>	mc-begin-insert	msg	
	mc-begin-ignore	msg	if inactive

2.7 Messages

<code>mc-nested</code>	Various messages related to mc-chunks. TODO document their meaning.
<code>mc-tag-missing</code>	
<code>mc-label-unknown</code>	
<code>mc-used-twice</code>	
<code>mc-not-open</code>	
<code>mc-pushed</code>	
<code>mc-popped</code>	
<code>mc-current</code>	

`struct-unknown` Various messages related to structure. Check the definition in the code for their meaning and the arguments they take.
`struct-no-objnum`
`struct-orphan`
`struct-faulty-nesting`
`struct-missing-tag`
`struct-used-twice`
`struct-label-unknown`
`struct-show-closing`

`tree-struct-still-open` Message issued at the end of the compilation if there are (beside Root) other open structures on the stack.

`tree-statistic` Message issued at the end of the compilation showing the number of objects to write

`show-struct` These two messages are used in debug mode to show the current structures in the log
`show-kids` and terminal.

`attr-unknown` Message if an attribute is unknown.

`role-missing` Messages related to role mapping.
`role-unknown`
`role-unknown-tag`
`role-unknown-NS`
`role-tag`
`new-tag`
`role-parent-child-result`
`role-remapping`

`tree-mcid-index-wrong` Used in the tree code, typically indicates the document must be rerun.

`sys-no-interwordspace` Message if an engine doesn't support inter word spaces

`para-hook-count-wrong` Message if the number of begin paragraph and end paragraph differ. This normally means faulty structure.

```
1 <@@=tag>
2 <*header>
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-checks-code} {2025-06-27} {0.99s}
4 {part of tagpdf - code related to checks, conditionals, debugging and messages}
5 </header>
```

3 Messages

3.1 Messages related to mc-chunks

mc-nested This message is issued if a mc is opened before the previous has been closed. This is not relevant for luamode, as the attributes don't care about this. It is used in the `\@@_check_mc_if_nested`: test.

```
6 (*package)
7 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {mc-nested} { nested~marked~content~found~--~mcid~#1 }
```

(End of definition for mc-nested. This function is documented on page 19.)

mc-tag-missing If the tag is missing

```
8 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {mc-tag-missing} { MC~tag~missing;~#1~used~instead~--~mcid~#2 }
```

(End of definition for mc-tag-missing. This function is documented on page 19.)

mc-label-unknown If the label of a mc that is used in another place is not known (yet) or has been undefined as the mc was already used.

```
9 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {mc-label-unknown}
10 { label~#1~unknown~or~has~been~already~used.\\
11   Either~rerun~or~remove~one~of~the~uses. }
```

(End of definition for mc-label-unknown. This function is documented on page 19.)

mc-used-twice An mc-chunk can be inserted only in one structure. This indicates wrong coding and so should at least give a warning.

```
12 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {mc-used-twice} { mc~#1~has~been~already~used }
```

(End of definition for mc-used-twice. This function is documented on page 19.)

mc-not-open This is issued if a `\tag_mc_end`: is issued wrongly, wrong coding.

```
13 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {mc-not-open} { there~is~no~mc~to~end~at~#1 }
```

(End of definition for mc-not-open. This function is documented on page 19.)

mc-pushed Informational messages about mc-pushing.

mc-popped

```
14 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {mc-pushed} { #1~has~been~pushed~to~the~mc~stack}
15 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {mc-popped} { #1~has~been~removed~from~the~mc~stack }
```

(End of definition for mc-pushed and mc-popped. These functions are documented on page 19.)

mc-current Informational messages about current mc state.

```
16 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {mc-current}
17 { current~MC:~
18   \bool_if:NTF\g__tag_in_mc_bool
19     {abscnt=\__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:~tag=\g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl}
20     {no~MC~open,~current~abscnt=\__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:"}
21 }
```

(End of definition for mc-current. This function is documented on page 19.)

3.2 Messages related to structures

struct-unknown if for example a parent key value points to structure that doesn't exist (yet)

```
22 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {struct-unknown}  
23   { structure-with-number~#1-doesn't-exist\\ #2 }
```

(End of definition for struct-unknown. This function is documented on page 20.)

struct-no-objnum Should not happen ...

```
24 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {struct-no-objnum} { objnum-missing-for~structure~#1 }
```

(End of definition for struct-no-objnum. This function is documented on page 20.)

struct-orphan This indicates that there is a structure which has kids but no parent. This can happen if a structure is stashed but then not used.

```
25 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {struct-orphan}  
26   {  
27     Structure~#1-has~#2~kids~but~no~parent.\\  
28     It-is~turned~into~an~artifact.\\  
29     Did~you~stashed~a~structure~and~then~didn't~use~it?  
30   }  
31
```

(End of definition for struct-orphan. This function is documented on page 20.)

struct-faulty-nesting This indicates that there is somewhere one `\tag_struct_end:` too much. This should be normally an error.

```
32 \msg_new:nnn { tag }  
33   {struct-faulty-nesting}  
34   { there-is~no~open~structure~on~the~stack }
```

(End of definition for struct-faulty-nesting. This function is documented on page 20.)

struct-missing-tag A structure must have a tag.

```
35 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {struct-missing-tag} { a-structure~must~have~a~tag! }
```

(End of definition for struct-missing-tag. This function is documented on page 20.)

struct-used-twice

```
36 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {struct-used-twice}  
37   { structure~with~label~#1~has~already~been~used }
```

(End of definition for struct-used-twice. This function is documented on page 20.)

struct-label-unknown label is unknown, typically needs a rerun.

```
38 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {struct-label-unknown}  
39   { structure~with~label~#1~is~unknown~rerun }
```

(End of definition for struct-label-unknown. This function is documented on page 20.)

struct-show-closing Informational message shown if log-mode is high enough

```
40 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {struct-show-closing}  
41   { closing~structure~#1~tagged~\use:e{\prop_item:cn{g__tag_struct_#1_prop}{S}} }
```

(End of definition for struct-show-closing. This function is documented on page 20.)

struct-Ref-unknown This message is issued at the end, when the Ref keys are updated. TODO: in debug mode it should report more info about the structure.

```

42 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {struct-Ref-unknown}
43 {
44     #1~has~no~related~structure.\\
45     /Ref~not~updated.
46 }

```

(End of definition for struct-Ref-unknown. This function is documented on page ??.)

tree-struct-still-open Message issued at the end if there are beside Root other open structures on the stack.

```

47 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {tree-struct-still-open}
48 {
49     There~are~still~open~structures~on~the~stack!\\
50     The~stack~contains~\seq_use:Nn\g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq{,}.\\
51     The~structures~are~automatically~closed,\\
52     but~their~nesting~can~be~wrong.
53 }

```

(End of definition for tree-struct-still-open. This function is documented on page 20.)

tree-statistic Message issued at the end showing the estimated number of structures and MC-childs

```

54 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {tree-statistic}
55 {
56     Finalizing~the~tagging~structure:\\
57     Writing~out~\c_tilde_str
58     \int_use:N\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int\c_space_tl~structure~objects\\
59     with~\c_tilde_str
60     \int_use:N\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int\c_space_tl'MC'~leaf~nodes.\\
61     Be~patient~if~there~are~lots~of~objects!
62 }
63 \</package>

```

(End of definition for tree-statistic. This function is documented on page 20.)

The following messages are only needed in debug mode.

show-struct This two messages are used to show the current structures in the log and terminal.

show-kids

```

64 <*\debug>
65 \msg_new:nnn { tag/debug } { show-struct }
66 {
67     =====\\
68     The~structure~#1~
69     \tl_if_empty:nTF {#2}
70     { is-empty \\>- . }
71     { contains: #2 }
72     \\
73 }
74 \msg_new:nnn { tag/debug } { show-kids }
75 {
76     The~structure~has~the~following~kids:
77     \tl_if_empty:nTF {#2}
78     { \\>- NONE }
79     { #2 }
80     \\

```

```

81      =====
82    }
83  </debug>

```

(End of definition for show-struct and show-kids. These functions are documented on page 20.)

3.3 Attributes

Not much yet, as attributes aren't used so much.

attr-unknown

```

84  (*package)
85  \msg_new:nnn { tag } {attr-unknown} { attribute-#1-is-unknown}

```

(End of definition for attr-unknown. This function is documented on page 20.)

3.4 Roles

role-missing Warning message if either the tag or the role is missing

```

role-unknown
role-unknown-tag
role-unknown-NS
86  \msg_new:nnn { tag } {role-missing}      { tag-#1-has-no-role-assigned }
87  \msg_new:nnn { tag } {role-unknown}      { role-#1-is-not-known }
88  \msg_new:nnn { tag } {role-unknown-tag}  { tag-#1-is-not-known }
89  \msg_new:nnn { tag } {role-unknown-NS}  { \tl_if_empty:nTF{#1}{Empty-NS}{NS-#1-is-not-known}

```

(End of definition for role-missing and others. These functions are documented on page 20.)

role-parent-child-check This is an info message that inform which elements are checked, typically used to show the original tags, not the rolemapped one.

```

90  \msg_new:nnn { tag } {role-parent-child-check}
91  { Checking-Parent-Child- '#1' ---> '#2' }

```

(End of definition for role-parent-child-check. This function is documented on page ??.)

role-parent-child-result This is info and warning message about the containment rules between child and parent tags.

```

92  \msg_new:nnn { tag } {role-parent-child-result}
93  { Parent-Child- '#1' ---> '#2' .\Relation-is-#3-\msg_line_context:}

```

(End of definition for role-parent-child-result. This function is documented on page 20.)

role-struct-parent-child-forbidden The most important message is that the relation is not allowed between two structures. Argument #1 is the parent structure number, #2 is the child structure number, #3 NS:tag info of the parent (TODO perhaps rolemapped), #4 NS:tag of the child. (TODO)

```

94  \msg_new:nnn { tag } {role-struct-parent-child-forbidden}
95  {
96    Parent-Child- '#3' ---> '#4' .\
97    Relation-is-not-allowed! ~\msg_line_context:\
98    struct-#1,~
99    \exp_last_unbraced:Ne\use_i:nn { \prop_item:cn{ g__tag_struct_#1_prop}{tag} }
100   \c_space_tl-->\c_space_tl
101    struct-#2,~
102    \exp_last_unbraced:Ne\use_i:nn { \prop_item:cn{ g__tag_struct_#2_prop}{tag} }
103  }

```


(End of definition for role-struct-parent-child-forbidden. This function is documented on page ??.)

role-MC-child-forbidden In case that MC is forbidden we use a special message. Argument #1 is the parent structure number. #2 NS:tag of the parent,

```
104 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {role-MC-child-forbidden}
105   {
106     Parent-Child~'#2'~-->~'MC~(real~content)'\.\\
107     Relation~is~not~allowed! ~\msg_line_context:\\
108     struct~#1,~
109     \exp_last_unbraced:Ne\use_i:nn { \prop_item:cn{ g__tag_struct_#1_prop}{tag} }
110   }
```

(End of definition for role-MC-child-forbidden. This function is documented on page ??.)

role-parent-child-forbidden The most important message is that the relation is not allowed. Argument #1 is the parent structure number. #2 NS:tag of the parent, #3 NS:tag of the child.

```
111 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {role-parent-child-forbidden}
112   {
113     Parent-Child~'#2'~-->~'#3'\\.\\
114     Relation~is~not~allowed! ~\msg_line_context:\\
115     struct~#1,~\prop_item:cn{ g__tag_struct_#1_prop}{S}
116     \c_space_tl
117     \str_if_eq:nnF{#3}{MC~(realcontent)}
118     {-->~struct~\int_eval:n {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}}
119   }
```

(End of definition for role-parent-child-forbidden. This function is documented on page ??.)

__tag_check_forbidden_parent_child:nnnn

```
120 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_forbidden_parent_child:nnnn #1#2#3#4
121 % #1 check number, #2 number of parent struct
122 % #3 parent info, #4 child info
123 {
124   \int_compare:nNnT {#1 } <0
125   {
126     \msg_warning:nneee
127     { tag }
128     {role-parent-child-forbidden}
129     { #2}
130     { #3 }
131     { #4 }
132   }
133 }
134 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_check_forbidden_parent_child:nnnn {nnee}
135
136 % new with structure numbers:
137 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_struct_forbidden_parent_child:nnn #1#2#3
138 % #1 check number,
139 % #2 number of parent struct
140 % #3 number of child struct
141 {
142   \int_compare:nNnT {#1 } <0
143   {
144     \prop_get:cnN {g__tag_struct_#2_prop}{parentrole}\l__tag_get_parent_tmpc_tl
```

```

145     \prop_get:cnN {g__tag_struct_#3_prop}{rolemap}\l__tag_get_child_tmpc_tl
146     \msg_warning:nneeee
147     { tag }
148     {role-struct-parent-child-forbidden}
149     { #2 }
150     { #3 }
151     {
152     \exp_last_unbraced:No \use_ii:nn { \l__tag_get_parent_tmpc_tl }
153     :
154     \exp_last_unbraced:No \use_i:nn { \l__tag_get_parent_tmpc_tl }
155     }
156     {
157     \exp_last_unbraced:No \use_ii:nn { \l__tag_get_child_tmpc_tl }
158     :
159     \exp_last_unbraced:No \use_i:nn { \l__tag_get_child_tmpc_tl }
160     }
161   }
162 }
163 \cs_generate_variant:Nn\__tag_check_struct_forbidden_parent_child:nnn{onn}

```

(End of definition for __tag_check_forbidden_parent_child:nnnn.)

role-parent-child-unresolved If a structure is stashed and then used later and its root is one of Part, Div or NonStruct, then we can not check the parent-child rules. This would require to know all children. In this case we only warn. resolved a Argument #1 is the parent structure number. #2 NS:tag of the parent, #3 NS:tag of the child.

```

164 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {role-parent-child-unresolved}
165 {
166   Structure~\int_eval:n {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}~was~moved~into~structure~#1.\
167   Parent-Child~'#2'~-->~'#3'~can~not~checked.
168 }

```

(End of definition for role-parent-child-unresolved. This function is documented on page ??.)

__tag_check_unresolved_parent_child:nnnn

```

169 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_unresolved_parent_child:nnnn #1#2#3#4
170 % #1 check number, #2 number of parent struct
171 % #3 parent info, #4 child info
172 {
173   \int_compare:nNnT { #1 } = {\c__tag_role_rule_checkparent_tl}
174   {
175     \msg_warning:nneeee
176     { tag }
177     {role-parent-child-unresolved}
178     { #2 }
179     { #3 }
180     { #4 }
181   }
182 }

```

(End of definition for __tag_check_unresolved_parent_child:nnnn.)

tag/check/parent-child **tag/check/parent-child-end** Sockets used around the parent-child checks so that we can disable them.

```

183 \socket_new:nn{tag/check/parent-child}{1}

```

```

184 \socket_new:nn{tag/check/parent-child-end}{0}
185 \socket_new_plug:nnn {tag/check/parent-child-end}{check}
186 {
187   \sys_if_engine luatex:T
188   {
189     \lua_now:e
190     {
191       ltx.__tag.func.check_parent_child_rules ( 2 )
192     }
193   }
194 }

```

And a key to disable the check

```

195 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup}
196 {
197   debug / parent-child-check .choice:,
198   debug / parent-child-check / on .code:n =
199   {
200     \socket_assign_plug:nn {tag/check/parent-child}{identity}
201   },
202   debug / parent-child-check / off .code:n=
203   {
204     \socket_assign_plug:nn {tag/check/parent-child}{noop}
205     \socket_assign_plug:nn {tag/check/parent-child-end}{noop}
206   },
207   debug / parent-child-check / atend .code:n=
208   {
209     \socket_assign_plug:nn {tag/check/parent-child}{noop}
210     \socket_assign_plug:nn {tag/check/parent-child-end}{check}
211   }
212 }

```

(End of definition for tag/check/parent-child and tag/check/parent-child-end. These functions are documented on page ??.)

role-remapping This is info and warning message about role-remapping

```

213 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {role-remapping}
214 { remapping~tag~to~#1 }

```

(End of definition for role-remapping. This function is documented on page 20.)

role-tag Info messages.

new-tag

```

215 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {role-tag}          { mapping-tag-#1~to~role-#2 }
216 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {new-tag}          { adding-new-tag-#1 }
217 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {read-namespace}   { reading-namespace-definitions-tagpdf-
ns-#1.def }
218 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {namespace-missing}{ namespace-definitions-tagpdf-ns-#1.def~not~found }
219 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {namespace-unknown}{ namespace-#1~is~not~declared }

```

(End of definition for role-tag and new-tag. These functions are documented on page 20.)

3.5 Miscellaneous

tree-mcid-index-wrong Used in the tree code, typically indicates the document must be rerun.

```
220 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {tree-mcid-index-wrong}
221   {something-is-wrong-with-the-mcid--rerun}
```

(End of definition for tree-mcid-index-wrong. This function is documented on page 20.)

sys-no-interwordspace Currently only pdf_latex and lualatex have some support for real spaces.

```
222 \msg_new:nnn { tag } {sys-no-interwordspace}
223   {engine/output-mode-#1-doesn't-support-the-interword-spaces}
```

(End of definition for sys-no-interwordspace. This function is documented on page 20.)

__tag_check_typeout_v:n A simple logging function. By default is gobbles its argument, but the log-keys sets it to typeout.

```
224 \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_check_typeout_v:n \use_none:n
```

(End of definition for __tag_check_typeout_v:n.)

para-hook-count-wrong At the end of the document we check if the count of para-begin and para-end is identical. If not we issue a warning; this is normally a coding error and breaks the structure.

```
225 \msg_new:nnnn { tag } {para-hook-count-wrong}
226   {The-number-of-automatic-begin-(#1)-and-end-(#2)-#3-para-hooks-differ!}
227   {This-quite-probably-a-coding-error-and-the-structure-will-be-wrong!}
228 \package}
```

(End of definition for para-hook-count-wrong. This function is documented on page 20.)

4 Retrieving data

\tag_get:n This retrieves some data. This is a generic command to retrieve data. Currently the only sensible values for the argument are `mc_tag`, `struct_tag` and `struct_num`.

```
229 \base\cs_new:Npn \tag_get:n #1 { \use:c {__tag_get_data_#1: } }
```

(End of definition for \tag_get:n. This function is documented on page 17.)

5 User conditionals

\tag_if_active_p: This tests if tagging is active. This allows packages to add conditional code. The test is true if all booleans, the global and the two local one are true.

\tag_if_active:TF

```
230 \base
231 \cs_if_exist:Nf\tag_if_active:T
232 {
233   \prg_new_conditional:Npnn \tag_if_active: { p , T , TF, F }
234     { \prg_return_false: }
235 }
236 \base
237 \package
238 \prg_set_conditional:Npnn \tag_if_active: { p , T , TF, F }
239 {
240   \bool_lazy_all:nTF
241   {
```

```

242     {\g__tag_active_struct_bool}
243     {\g__tag_active_mc_bool}
244     {\g__tag_active_tree_bool}
245     {\l__tag_active_struct_bool}
246     {\l__tag_active_mc_bool}
247   }
248   {
249     \prg_return_true:
250   }
251   {
252     \prg_return_false:
253   }
254 }
255 \endpackage

```

(End of definition for `\tag_if_active:TF`. This function is documented on page 17.)

`\tag_if_box_tagged_p:N` This tests if a box contains tagging commands. It relies on that the code that saved the box correctly set `\l_tag_box_<box number>_tl` to a positive value. The LaTeX commands will do that automatically at some time but it is in the responsibility of the user to ensure that when using low-level code. If the internal command doesn't exist the box is assumed to be untagged.

```

256 \begin{base}
257 \prg_new_conditional:Npnn \tag_if_box_tagged:N #1 {p,T,F,TF}
258 {
259   \tl_if_exist:cTF {l_tag_box_\int_use:N #1_tl}
260   {
261     \int_compare:nNnTF {0\tl_use:c{l_tag_box_\int_use:N #1_tl}}>{0}
262     { \prg_return_true: }
263     { \prg_return_false: }
264   }
265   {
266     \prg_return_false:
267     % warning??
268   }
269 }
270 \end{base}

```

(End of definition for `\tag_if_box_tagged:NTF`. This function is documented on page 17.)

6 Internal checks

These are checks used in various places in the code.

6.1 checks for active tagging

This checks if mc are active.

```

\__tag_check_if_active_mc:TF
\__tag_check_if_active_struct:TF
271 \begin{package}
272 \prg_new_conditional:Npnn \__tag_check_if_active_mc: {T,F,TF}
273 {
274   \bool_lazy_and:nnTF { \g__tag_active_mc_bool } { \l__tag_active_mc_bool }
275   {
276     \prg_return_true:

```

```

277     }
278     {
279         \prg_return_false:
280     }
281 }
282 \prg_new_conditional:Npnn \__tag_check_if_active_struct: {T,F,TF}
283 {
284     \bool_lazy_and:nnTF { \g__tag_active_struct_bool } { \l__tag_active_struct_bool }
285     {
286         \prg_return_true:
287     }
288     {
289         \prg_return_false:
290     }
291 }

```

(End of definition for __tag_check_if_active_mc:TF and __tag_check_if_active_struct:TF.)

6.2 Checks related to structures

__tag_check_structure_has_tag:n

Structures must have a tag, so we check if the S entry is in the property. It is an error if this is missing. The argument is a number. The tests for existence and type is split in structures, as the tags are stored differently to the mc case.

```

292 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_structure_has_tag:n #1 %#1 struct num
293 {
294     \prop_get:cnNF
295     { g__tag_struct_#1_prop }
296     {S}
297     \l__tag_tmp_unused_tl
298     {
299         \msg_error:nn { tag } {struct-missing-tag}
300     }
301 }

```

(End of definition for __tag_check_structure_has_tag:n.)

__tag_check_structure_tag:N

This checks if the name of the tag is known, either because it is a standard type or has been rolemapped.

```

302 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_structure_tag:N #1
303 {
304     \prop_get:NoNF \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop {#1}\l__tag_tmp_unused_tl
305     {
306         \msg_warning:nne { tag } {role-unknown-tag} {#1}
307     }
308 }

```

(End of definition for __tag_check_structure_tag:N.)

__tag_check_info_closing_struct:n

This info message is issued at a closing structure, the use should be guarded by log-level.

```

309 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_info_closing_struct:n #1 %#1 struct num
310 {
311     \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_loglevel_int} > { 0 }
312     {
313         \msg_info:nnn { tag } {struct-show-closing} {#1}

```

```

314     }
315   }
316
317 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_check_info_closing_struct:n {o,e}

```

(End of definition for __tag_check_info_closing_struct:n.)

`__tag_check_no_open_struct:` This checks if there is an open structure. It should be used when trying to close a structure. It errors if false.

```

318 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_no_open_struct:
319 {
320   \msg_error:nn { tag } {struct-faulty-nesting}
321 }

```

(End of definition for __tag_check_no_open_struct:.)

`__tag_check_struct_used:n` This checks if a stashed structure has already been used.

```

322 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_struct_used:n #1 %#1 label
323 {
324   \prop_get:cnNT
325     {g__tag_struct\_property_ref:enn{tagpdfstruct-#1}{tagstruct}{unknown}_prop}
326     {parentnum}
327     \l__tag_tmpa_tl
328     {
329       \msg_warning:nnn { tag } {struct-used-twice} {#1}
330     }
331 }

```

(End of definition for __tag_check_struct_used:n.)

6.3 Checks related to roles

`__tag_check_add_tag_role:nn` This check is used when defining a new role mapping.

```

332 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_add_tag_role:nn #1 #2 %#1 tag, #2 role
333 {
334   \tl_if_empty:nTF {#2}
335   {
336     \msg_error:nnn { tag } {role-missing} {#1}
337   }
338   {
339     \prop_get:NnNTF \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop {#2} \l__tag_tmpa_tl
340     {
341       \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_loglevel_int} > { 0 }
342       {
343         \msg_info:nnnn { tag } {role-tag} {#1} {#2}
344       }
345     }
346     {
347       \msg_error:nnn { tag } {role-unknown} {#2}
348     }
349   }
350 }

```

Similar with a namespace

```

351 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_add_tag_role:nnn #1 #2 #3 %#1 tag/NS, #2 role #3 namespace
352 {
353   \tl_if_empty:nTF {#2}
354   {
355     \msg_error:nnn { tag } {role-missing} {#1}
356   }
357   {
358     \prop_get:cnNTF { g__tag_role_NS_#3_prop } {#2} \l__tag_tmpa_tl
359     {
360       \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_loglevel_int} > { 0 }
361       {
362         \msg_info:nnnn { tag } {role-tag} {#1} {#2/#3}
363       }
364     }
365     {
366       \msg_error:nnn { tag } {role-unknown} {#2/#3}
367     }
368   }
369 }

```

(End of definition for `__tag_check_add_tag_role:nn`.)

6.4 Check related to mc-chunks

`__tag_check_mc_if_nested:` Two tests if a mc is currently open. One for the true (for begin code), one for the false part (for end code).

```

\__tag_check_mc_if_open:
370 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_mc_if_nested:
371 {
372   \__tag_mc_if_in:T
373   {
374     \msg_warning:nne { tag } {mc-nested} { \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt: }
375   }
376 }
377
378 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_mc_if_open:
379 {
380   \__tag_mc_if_in:F
381   {
382     \msg_warning:nne { tag } {mc-not-open} { \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt: }
383   }
384 }

```

(End of definition for `__tag_check_mc_if_nested:` and `__tag_check_mc_if_open:.`)

`__tag_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn` This creates an information message if mc's are pushed or popped. The first argument is a word (pushed or popped), the second the tag name. With larger log-level the stack is shown too.

```

385 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn #1 #2
386 {
387   \int_compare:nNnT
388   { \l__tag_loglevel_int } = { 2 }
389   { \msg_info:nne {tag}{mc-#1}{#2} }
390   \int_compare:nNnT

```



```

391     { \l__tag_loglevel_int } > { 2 }
392     {
393         \msg_info:nne {tag}{mc-#1}{#2}
394         \seq_log:N \g__tag_mc_stack_seq
395     }
396 }

```

(End of definition for `__tag_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn`.)

`__tag_check_mc_tag:N` This checks if the mc has a (known) tag, if it is empty (e.g. if due to a call to the output routine, see issue <https://github.com/latex3/tagpdf/issues/111>) then we fall back to the structure name.

```

397 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_mc_tag:N #1 % #1 is var with a tag name in it
398 {
399     \tl_if_empty:NTF #1
400     {
401         \tl_set:No #1 { \g__tag_struct_tag_tl }
402         \msg_info:nnee { tag } {mc-tag-missing} { \g__tag_struct_tag_tl }{ \__tag_get_mc_abs
403     }
404     {
405         \prop_get:NoNF \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop {#1}\l__tag_tmp_unused_tl
406         {
407             \msg_warning:nne { tag } {role-unknown-tag} {#1}
408         }
409     }
410 }

```

(End of definition for `__tag_check_mc_tag:N`.)

`\g__tag_check_mc_used_intarray` This variable holds the list of used mc numbers. Everytime we store a mc-number we will add one the relevant array index. If everything is right at the end there should be only 1 until the max count of the mcid. 2 indicates that one mcid was used twice, 0 that we lost one. In engines other than luatex the total number of all intarray entries are restricted so we use only a rather small value of 65536, and we initialize the array only at first used, guarded by the log-level. This check is probably only needed for debugging. `__tag_check_init_mc_used:` TODO does this really make sense to check? When can it happen??

```

411 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_init_mc_used:
412 {
413     \intarray_new:Nn \g__tag_check_mc_used_intarray { 65536 }
414     \cs_gset_eq:NN \__tag_check_init_mc_used: \prg_do_nothing:
415 }

```

(End of definition for `\g__tag_check_mc_used_intarray` and `__tag_check_init_mc_used:`.)

`__tag_check_mc_used:n` This checks if a mc is used twice.

```

416 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_mc_used:n #1 % #1 mcid absnt
417 {
418     \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_loglevel_int} > { 2 }
419     {
420         \__tag_check_init_mc_used:
421         \intarray_gset:Nnn \g__tag_check_mc_used_intarray
422             {#1}
423             { \intarray_item:Nn \g__tag_check_mc_used_intarray {#1} + 1 }
424         \int_compare:nNnT

```

```

425     {
426     \intarray_item:Nn \g__tag_check_mc_used_intarray {#1}
427     }
428     >
429     { 1 }
430     {
431     \msg_warning:nnn { tag } {mc-used-twice} {#1}
432     }
433   }
434 }

```

(End of definition for __tag_check_mc_used:n.)

__tag_check_show_MCID_by_page: This allows to show the mc on a page. Currently unused.

```

435 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_show_MCID_by_page:
436 {
437   \tl_set:Nc \l__tag_tmpa_tl
438   {
439     \__tag_property_ref_lastpage:nn
440     {abspage}
441     {-1}
442   }
443   \int_step_inline:nnnn {1}{1}
444   {
445     \l__tag_tmpa_tl
446   }
447   {
448     \seq_clear:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq
449     \int_step_inline:nnnn
450     {1}
451     {1}
452     {
453       \__tag_property_ref_lastpage:nn
454       {tagmcabs}
455       {-1}
456     }
457     {
458       \int_compare:nT
459       {
460         \property_ref:enn
461         {mcid-####1}
462         {tagabspage}
463         {-1}
464         =
465         ##1
466       }
467       {
468         \seq_gput_right:Nc \l__tag_tmpa_seq
469         {
470           Page##1-####1-
471           \property_ref:enn
472           {mcid-####1}
473           {tagmcid}
474           {-1}

```

```

475         }
476     }
477 }
478     \seq_show:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq
479 }
480 }

```

(End of definition for __tag_check_show_MCID_by_page:.)

6.5 Checks related to the state of MC on a page or in a split stream

The following checks are currently only usable in generic mode as they rely on the marks defined in the mc-generic module. They are used to detect if a mc-chunk has been split by a page break or similar and additional end/begin commands are needed.

`__tag_check_mc_in_galley_p:` At first we need a test to decide if `\tag_mc_begin:n` (tmb) and `\tag_mc_end:` (tme)
`__tag_check_mc_in_galley:TF` has been used at all on the current galley. As each command issues two slightly different marks we can do it by comparing firstmarks and botmarks. The test assumes that the marks have been already mapped into the sequence with `\@@_mc_get_marks:.` As `\seq_if_eq:NNTF` doesn't exist we use the tl-test.

```

481 \prg_new_conditional:Npnn \__tag_check_if_mc_in_galley: { T,F,TF }
482 {
483     \tl_if_eq:NNTF \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq
484     { \prg_return_false: }
485     { \prg_return_true: }
486 }

```

(End of definition for __tag_check_mc_in_galley:TF.)

`__tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing_p:` This checks if a extra top mark (“extra-tmb”) is needed. According to the analysis this
`__tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing:TF` the case if the firstmarks start with e- or b+. Like above we assume that the marks content is already in the seq's.

```

487 \prg_new_conditional:Npnn \__tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing: { T,F,TF }
488 {
489     \bool_if:nTF
490     {
491         \str_if_eq_p:ee {\seq_item:Nn \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq {1}}{e-}
492         ||
493         \str_if_eq_p:ee {\seq_item:Nn \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq {1}}{b+}
494     }
495     { \prg_return_true: }
496     { \prg_return_false: }
497 }

```

(End of definition for __tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing:TF.)

`__tag_check_if_mc_tme_missing_p:` This checks if a extra bottom mark (“extra-tme”) is needed. According to the analysis
`__tag_check_if_mc_tme_missing:TF` this the case if the botmarks starts with b+. Like above we assume that the marks content is already in the seq's.

```

498 \prg_new_conditional:Npnn \__tag_check_if_mc_tme_missing: { T,F,TF }
499 {
500     \str_if_eq:eeTF {\seq_item:Nn \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq {1}}{b+}

```

```

501     { \prg_return_true: }
502     { \prg_return_false: }
503 }

```

(End of definition for `__tag_check_if_mc_tme_missing:TF`.)

```

504 </package>
505 <*debug>

```

Code for `tagpdf-debug`. This will probably change over time. At first something for the `mc` commands.

```

506 \msg_new:nnn { tag / debug } {mc-begin} { MC~begin~#1~with~options:~\tl_to_str:n{#2}~[\msg_line_context:] }
507 \msg_new:nnn { tag / debug } {mc-end} { MC~end~#1~[\msg_line_context:] }
508
509 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_debug_mc_begin_insert:n #1
510 {
511   \int_compare:nNnT { \l__tag_loglevel_int } > {0}
512   {
513     \msg_note:nnnn { tag / debug } {mc-begin} {inserted} { #1 }
514   }
515 }
516 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_debug_mc_begin_ignore:n #1
517 {
518   \int_compare:nNnT { \l__tag_loglevel_int } > {0}
519   {
520     \msg_note:nnnn { tag / debug } {mc-begin} {ignored} { #1 }
521   }
522 }
523 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_debug_mc_end_insert:
524 {
525   \int_compare:nNnT { \l__tag_loglevel_int } > {0}
526   {
527     \msg_note:nnn { tag / debug } {mc-end} {inserted}
528   }
529 }
530 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_debug_mc_end_ignore:
531 {
532   \int_compare:nNnT { \l__tag_loglevel_int } > {0}
533   {
534     \msg_note:nnn { tag / debug } {mc-end} {ignored}
535   }
536 }

```

And now something for the structures

```

537 \msg_new:nnn { tag / debug } {struct-begin}
538 {
539   Struct~\tag_get:n{struct_num}~begin~#1~with~options:~\tl_to_str:n{#2}~\[\msg_line_context:]
540 }
541 \msg_new:nnn { tag / debug } {struct-end}
542 {
543   Struct~end~#1~[\msg_line_context:]
544 }
545 \msg_new:nnn { tag / debug } {struct-end-wrong}
546 {
547   Struct~end~'#1'~doesn't~fit~start~'#2'~[\msg_line_context:]

```

```

548 }
549
550 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_debug_struct_begin_insert:n #1
551 {
552   \int_compare:nNnT { \l__tag_loglevel_int } > {0}
553   {
554     \msg_note:nnnn { tag / debug } {struct-begin} {inserted} { #1 }
555     \seq_log:N \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq
556   }
557 }
558 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_debug_struct_begin_ignore:n #1
559 {
560   \int_compare:nNnT { \l__tag_loglevel_int } > {0}
561   {
562     \msg_note:nnnn { tag / debug } {struct-begin } {ignored} { #1 }
563   }
564 }
565 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_debug_struct_end_insert:
566 {
567   \int_compare:nNnT { \l__tag_loglevel_int } > {0}
568   {
569     \msg_note:nnn { tag / debug } {struct-end} {inserted}
570     \seq_log:N \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq
571   }
572 }
573 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_debug_struct_end_ignore:
574 {
575   \int_compare:nNnT { \l__tag_loglevel_int } > {0}
576   {
577     \msg_note:nnn { tag / debug } {struct-end } {ignored}
578   }
579 }
580 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_debug_struct_end_check:n #1
581 {
582   \int_compare:nNnT { \l__tag_loglevel_int } > {0}
583   {
584     \seq_get:NNT \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq \l__tag_tmpa_tl
585     {
586       \str_if_eq:eeF
587       {#1}
588       {\exp_last_unbraced:No \use_i:nn { \l__tag_tmpa_tl }}
589       {
590         \msg_warning:nnee { tag/debug } {struct-end-wrong }
591         {#1}
592         {\exp_last_unbraced:No \use_i:nn { \l__tag_tmpa_tl }}
593       }
594     }
595   }
596 }

```

This tracks tag suspend and resume. The tag-suspend message should go before the int is increased. The tag-resume message after the int is decreased.

```

597 \msg_new:nnn { tag / debug } {tag-suspend}
598 {

```

```

599   \int_if_zero:nTF
600     {#1}
601     {Tagging~suspended}
602     {Tagging~(not)~suspended~(already~inactive)}\
603     level:~#1~==>~\int_eval:n{#1+1}\tl_if_empty:nF{#2}{,~label:~#2}~[\msg_line_context:]
604   }
605 \msg_new:nnn { tag / debug } {tag~resume}
606   {
607     \int_if_zero:nTF
608       {#1}
609       {Tagging~resumed}
610       {Tagging~(not)~resumed}\
611       level:~\int_eval:n{#1+1}~==>~#1\tl_if_empty:nF{#2}{,~label:~#2}~[\msg_line_context:]
612   }
613 </debug>

```

6.6 Benchmarks

It doesn't make much sense to do benchmarks in debug mode or in combination with a log-level as this would slow down the compilation. So we add simple commands that can be activated if `l3benchmark` has been loaded. TODO: is a warning needed?

```

614 <*package>
615 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_benchmark_tic: {}
616 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_benchmark_toc: {}
617 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_check_benchmark_on:
618   {
619     \cs_if_exist:NT \benchmark_tic:
620     {
621       \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_check_benchmark_tic: \benchmark_tic:
622       \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_check_benchmark_toc: \benchmark_toc:
623     }
624   }
625 </package>

```

Part III

The `tagpdf-user` module

Code related to L^AT_EX2e user commands and document commands Part of the `tagpdf` package

1 Setup commands

`\tagpdfsetup` `\tagpdfsetup{⟨key val list⟩}`

This is the main setup command to adapt the behaviour of `tagpdf`. It can be used in the preamble and in the document (but not all keys make sense there).

`activate` (setup-key) And additional setup key which combine the other activate keys `activate/mc`, `activate/tree`, `activate/struct` and additionally adds a document structure.

`\tag_tool:n` `\tag_tool:n {⟨key val⟩}`
`\tagtool`

The tagging of basic document elements will require a variety of small commands to configure and adapt the tagging. This command will collect them under a command interface. The argument is *one* key-value like string. This is work in progress and both syntax, known arguments and implementation can change!

2 Commands related to mc-chunks

`\tagmcbegin` `\tagmcbegin{⟨key-val⟩}`
`\tagmchend` `\tagmchend`
`\tagmcuse` `\tagmcuse{⟨label⟩}`

These are wrappers around `\tag_mc_begin:n`, `\tag_mc_end:` and `\tag_mc_use:n`. The commands and their argument are documented in the `tagpdf-mc` module. In difference to the `expl3` commands, `\tagmcbegin` issues also an `\ignorespaces`, and `\tagmchend` will issue in horizontal mode an `\unskip`.

`\tagmcifinTF` `\tagmcifinTF{⟨true code⟩}{⟨false code⟩}`

This is a wrapper around `\tag_mc_if_in:TF`. and tests if an mc is open or not. It is mostly of importance for `pdflatex` as `lualatex` doesn't mind much if a mc tag is not correctly closed. Unlike the `expl3` command it is not expandable.

The command is probably not of much use and will perhaps disappear in future versions. It normally makes more sense to push/pop an mc-chunk.

3 Commands related to structures

<code>\tagstructbegin</code>	<code>\tagstructbegin{⟨key-val⟩}</code>
<code>\tagstructend</code>	<code>\tagstructend</code>
<code>\tagstructuse</code>	<code>\tagstructuse{⟨label⟩}</code>

These are direct wrappers around `\tag_struct_begin:n`, `\tag_struct_end:` and `\tag_struct_use:n`. The commands and their argument are documented in the `tagpdf-struct` module.

4 Debugging

<code>\ShowTagging</code>	<code>\ShowTagging{⟨key-val⟩}</code>
---------------------------	--------------------------------------

This is a generic function to output various debugging helps. It not necessarily stops the compilation. The keys and their function are described below.

<code>mc-data (show-key)</code>	<code>mc-data = ⟨number⟩</code>
---------------------------------	---------------------------------

This key is (currently?) relevant for lua mode only. It shows the data of all mc-chunks created so far. It is accurate only after shipout (and perhaps a second compilation), so typically should be issued after a newpage. The value is a positive integer and sets the first mc-shown. If no value is given, 1 is used and so all mc-chunks created so far are shown.

<code>mc-current (show-key)</code>	<code>mc-current</code>
------------------------------------	-------------------------

This key shows the number and the tag of the currently open mc-chunk. If no chunk is open it shows only the state of the abs count. It works in all mode, but the output in luamode looks different.

<code>mc-marks (show-key)</code>	<code>mc-marks = show|use</code>
----------------------------------	----------------------------------

This key helps to debug the page marks. It should only be used at shipout in header or footer.

<code>struct-stack (show-key)</code>	<code>struct-stack = log|show</code>
--------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

This key shows the current structure stack. With `log` the info is only written to the log-file, `show` stops the compilation and shows on the terminal. If no value is used, then the default is `show`.

<code>debug/structures (show-key)</code>	<code>debug/structures = ⟨structure number⟩</code>
--	--

This key is available only if the `tagpdf-debug` package is loaded and shows all structures starting with the one with the number given by the key.

5 Extension commands

The following commands and code parts are not core commands of tagpdf. They either provide work-arounds for missing functionality elsewhere, or do a first step to apply tagpdf commands to document commands.

The commands and keys should be view as experimental!

This part will be regularly revisited to check if the code should go to a better place or can be improved and so can change easily.

5.1 Fake space

`\pdffakespace` (lua-only) This provides a lua-version of the `\pdffakespace` primitive of pdftex.

5.2 Tagging of paragraphs

This makes use of the paragraph hooks in LaTeX to automate the tagging of paragraph. It requires sane paragraph nesting, faulty code, e.g. a missing `\par` at the end of a low-level vbox can highly confuse the tagging. The tags should be carefully checked if this is used.

<code>para/tagging</code> (setup-key)	<code>para/tagging = true|false</code>
<code>paratagging-show</code> (deprecated)	<code>debug/show=para</code>
<code>paratagging</code> (deprecated)	<code>debug/show=paraOff</code>

The `para/tagging` key can be used in `\tagpdfsetup` and enable/disable tagging of paragraphs. `debug/show=para` puts small colored numbers at the begin and end of a paragraph. This is meant as a debugging help. The number are boxes and have a (tiny) height, so they can affect typesetting.

`\tagpdfparaOn` These commands allow to enable/disable para tagging too and are a bit faster than `\tagpdfparaOff` `\tagpdfsetup`. But I'm not sure if the names are good.

`\tagpdfsuppressmarks` This command allows to suppress the creation of the marks. It takes an argument which should normally be one of the mc-commands, puts a group around it and suppress the marks creation in this group. This command should be used if the begin and end command are at different boxing levels. E.g.

```
\@hangfrom
{
  \tagstructbegin{tag=H1}%
  \tagmcbegin   {tag=H1}%
  #2
}
{#3\tagpdfsuppressmarks{\tagmcbegin}\tagstructend}%
```

5.3 Header and footer

Header and footer are automatically tagged as artifact: They are surrounded by an artifact-mc and inside tagging is stopped. If some real content is in the header and footer, tagging must be restarted there explicitly. The behaviour can be changed with the following key. The key accepts the values `true` (the default), `false` which disables the header tagging code. This can be useful if the page style is empty (it then avoids empty mc-chunks) or if the head and foot should be tagged in some special way. The last value, `pagination`, is like `true` but additionally adds an artifact structure with an pagination attribute.

```
page/exclude-header-footer (setup-key) page/exclude-header-footer = true|false|pagination
```

5.4 Link tagging

Links need a special structure and cross reference system. This is added through hooks of the l3pdfannot module and will work automatically if tagging is activated.

Links should (probably) have an alternative text in the Contents key. It is unclear which text this should be and how to get it. Currently the code simply adds the fix texts `url` and `ref`. Another text can be added by changing the dictionary value:

```
\pdfannot_dict_put:nnn  
{ link/GoTo }  
{ Contents }  
{ (ref) }
```

6 Socket support

```
\tag_socket_use:n \tag_socket_use:n {<socket name>}  
\tag_socket_use:nn \tag_socket_use:nn {<socket name>} {<socket argument>}  
\UseTaggingSocket \tag_socket_use:nnn {<socket name>} {<socket argument>} {<socket argument>}  
\tag_socket_use_expandable:n {<socket name>}  
\UseTaggingSocket {<socket name>}  
\UseTaggingSocket {<socket name>} {<socket argument>}  
\UseTaggingSocket {<socket name>} {<socket argument>} {<socket argument>}
```

Given that we sometimes have to suspend tagging, it would be fairly inefficient to put different plugs into these sockets whenever that happens. We therefore offer `\UseTaggingSocket` which is like `\UseSocket` except that it expects a socket starting with `tagsupport/` but the socket name is specified without this prefix, i.e.,

```
\UseTaggingSocket{foo} → \UseSocket{tagsupport/foo}
```

Beside being slightly shorter, the big advantage is that this way we can change `\UseTaggingSocket` to do nothing by switching a boolean instead of changing the plugs of the tagging support sockets back and forth.

Usually, these sockets have (beside the default plug defined for every socket) one additional plug defined and directly assigned. This plug is used when tagging is active.

There may be more plugs, e.g., tagging with special debugging or special behaviour depending on the class or PDF version etc., but right now it is usually just on or off.

When tagging is suspended they all have the same predefined behaviour: The sockets with zero arguments do nothing. The sockets with one argument gobble their argument. The sockets with two arguments will drop their first argument and pass the second unchanged.

It is possible to use the tagging support sockets with `\UseSocket` directly, but in this case the socket remains active if e.g. `\SuspendTagging` is in force. There may be reasons for doing that but in general we expect to always use `\UseTaggingSocket`.

For special cases like in some `\halign` contexts we need a fully expandable version of the command. For these cases, `\UseExpandableTaggingSocket` can be used. To allow being expandable, it does not output any debugging information if `\DebugSocketsOn` is in effect and therefore should be avoided whenever possible.

The L3 programming layer versions `\tag_socket_use_expandable:n`, `\tag_socket_use:n`, and `\tag_socket_use:nn`, `\tag_socket_use:nnn` are slightly more efficient than `\UseTaggingSocket` because they do not have to determine how many arguments the socket takes when disabling it.

7 User commands and extensions of document commands

```

1 <@@=tag>
2 <*header>
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-user} {2025-06-27} {0.99s}
4   {tagpdf - user commands}
5 </header>

```

8 Setup and preamble commands

`\tagpdfsetup`

```

6 <base>\NewDocumentCommand \tagpdfsetup { m }{}
7 <*package>
8 \RenewDocumentCommand \tagpdfsetup { m }
9   {
10     \keys_set:nn { __tag / setup } { #1 }
11   }
12 </package>

```

(End of definition for `\tagpdfsetup`. This function is documented on page 39.)

`\tag_tool:n` This is a first definition of the tool command. Currently it uses key-val, but this should be probably be flattened to speed it up.

`\tagtool`

```

13 <base>\cs_new_protected:Npn\tag_tool:n #1 {}
14 <base>\cs_set_eq:NN\tagtool\tag_tool:n
15 <*package>
16 \cs_set_protected:Npn\tag_tool:n #1
17   {
18     \tag_if_active:T { \keys_set:nn {tag / tool}{#1} }
19   }
20 \cs_set_eq:NN\tagtool\tag_tool:n
21 </package>

```

(End of definition for `\tag_tool:n` and `\tagtool`. These functions are documented on page 39.)

9 Commands for the mc-chunks

```
\tagmcbegin
\tagmcbegin 22 < *base >
\tagmcbegin 23 \NewDocumentCommand \tagmcbegin { m }
\tagmcbegin 24 {
\tagmcbegin 25   \tag_mc_begin:n {#1}
\tagmcbegin 26 }
\tagmcbegin 27
\tagmcbegin 28
\tagmcbegin 29 \NewDocumentCommand \tagmcbegin { }
\tagmcbegin 30 {
\tagmcbegin 31   \tag_mc_end:
\tagmcbegin 32 }
\tagmcbegin 33
\tagmcbegin 34 \NewDocumentCommand \tagmcbegin { m }
\tagmcbegin 35 {
\tagmcbegin 36   \tag_mc_use:n {#1}
\tagmcbegin 37 }
\tagmcbegin 38 < /base >
```

(End of definition for `\tagmcbegin`, `\tagmcbegin`, and `\tagmcbegin`. These functions are documented on page 39.)

`\tagmcbeginTF` This is a wrapper around `\tag_mc_if_in:` and tests if an mc is open or not. It is mostly of importance for pdf_latex as lua_latex doesn't mind much if a mc tag is not correctly closed. Unlike the expl3 command it is not expandable.

```
39 < *package >
40 \NewDocumentCommand \tagmcbeginTF { m m }
41 {
42   \tag_mc_if_in:TF { #1 } { #2 }
43 }
44 < /package >
```

(End of definition for `\tagmcbeginTF`. This function is documented on page 39.)

10 Commands for the structure

`\tagstructbegin` These are structure related user commands. There are direct wrapper around the expl3 variants.

```
\tagstructbegin 45 < *base >
\tagstructbegin 46 \NewDocumentCommand \tagstructbegin { m }
\tagstructbegin 47 {
\tagstructbegin 48   \tag_struct_begin:n {#1}
\tagstructbegin 49 }
\tagstructbegin 50
\tagstructbegin 51 \NewDocumentCommand \tagstructbegin { }
\tagstructbegin 52 {
\tagstructbegin 53   \tag_struct_end:
\tagstructbegin 54 }
```

```

55
56 \NewDocumentCommand \tagstructure { m }
57   {
58     \tag_struct_use:n {#1}
59   }
60 </base>

```

(End of definition for `\tagstructbegin`, `\tagstructend`, and `\tagstructure`. These functions are documented on page 40.)

11 Socket support

Until we can be sure that the kernel defines the commands we provide them before redefining them: The expandable version will only work correctly after the 2024-11-01 release.

```

61 <*base>
62 \providecommand\tag_socket_use:n[1]{}
63 \providecommand\tag_socket_use:nn[2]{}
64 \providecommand\tag_socket_use:nnn[3]{#3}
65 \providecommand\tag_socket_use_expandable:n[1]{}
66 \providecommand\socket_use_expandable:nw [1] {
67   \use:c { __socket_#1_plug_ \str_use:c { l__socket_#1_plug_str } :w }
68 }
69 \providecommand\UseTaggingSocket[1]{}
70 \providecommand\UseExpandableTaggingSocket[1]{}
71 </base>

```

```

\tag_socket_use:n
\tag_socket_use:nn 72 <*package>
\tag_socket_use:nnn 73 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_socket_use:n #1
\UseTaggingSocket 74   {
\tag_socket_use_expandable:n 75   \bool_if:NT \l__tag_active_socket_bool
\UseExpandableTaggingSocket 76     { \socket_use:n {tagsupport/#1} }
77   }
78 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_socket_use:nn #1#2
79   {
80     \bool_if:NT \l__tag_active_socket_bool
81     { \socket_use:nn {tagsupport/#1} {#2} }
82   }
83 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_socket_use:nnn #1#2#3
84   {
85     \bool_if:NTF \l__tag_active_socket_bool
86     { \socket_use:nnn {tagsupport/#1} {#2} {#3} }
87     { #3 }
88   }
89 \cs_set:Npn \tag_socket_use_expandable:n #1
90   {
91     \bool_if:NT \l__tag_active_socket_bool
92     { \socket_use_expandable:n {tagsupport/#1} }
93   }

```

```

94 \cs_set_protected:Npn \UseTaggingSocket #1
95   {
96     \bool_if:NTF \l__tag_active_socket_bool
97       { \socket_use:nw {tagsupport/#1} }
98       {
99         \int_case:nnF
100           { \int_use:c { c__socket_tagsupport/#1_args_int } }
101           {
102             0 \prg_do_nothing:
103             1 \use_none:n
104             2 \use_ii:nn

```

We do not expect tagging sockets with more than one or two arguments, so for now we only provide those.

```

105     }
106     \ERRORusetaggingsocket
107   }
108 }
109 \cs_set:Npn \UseExpandableTaggingSocket #1
110   {
111     \bool_if:NTF \l__tag_active_socket_bool
112       { \socket_use_expandable:nw {tagsupport/#1} }
113       {
114         \int_case:nnF
115           { \int_use:c { c__socket_tagsupport/#1_args_int } }
116           {
117             0 \prg_do_nothing:
118             1 \use_none:n
119             2 \use_ii:nn

```

We do not expect tagging sockets with more than one or two arguments, so for now we only provide those.

```

120     }
121     \ERRORusetaggingsocket
122   }
123 }
124 </package>

```

(End of definition for \tag_socket_use:n and others. These functions are documented on page 42.)

12 Debugging

\ShowTagging This is a generic command for various show commands. It takes a keyval list, the various keys are implemented below.

```

125 <*package>
126 \NewDocumentCommand\ShowTagging { m }
127   {
128     \keys_set:nn { __tag / show }{ #1}
129   }
130 }

```

(End of definition for \ShowTagging. This function is documented on page 40.)

mc-data (show-key) This key is (currently?) relevant for lua mode only. It shows the data of all mc-chunks created so far. It is accurate only after shipout, so typically should be issued after a newpage. With the optional argument the minimal number can be set.

```

131 \keys_define:nn { __tag / show }
132   {
133     mc-data .code:n =
134       {
135         \bool_if:NT \g__tag_mode_lua_bool
136           {
137             \lua_now:e{ltx.__tag.trace.show_all_mc_data(#1,\__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:,0)}
138           }
139       }
140     ,mc-data .default:n = 1
141   }
142

```

(End of definition for mc-data (show-key). This function is documented on page 40.)

mc-current (show-key) This shows some info about the current mc-chunk. It works in generic and lua-mode.

```

143 \keys_define:nn { __tag / show }
144   { mc-current .code:n =
145     {
146       \bool_if:NTF \g__tag_mode_lua_bool
147         {
148           \int_compare:nNnTF
149             { -2147483647 }
150             =
151             {
152               \lua_now:e
153                 {
154                   tex.print
155                     (\int_use:N\c_document_cctab,
156                     tex.getattribute
157                       (luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_cnt_attr))
158                 }
159             }
160         }
161       \lua_now:e
162         {
163           ltx.__tag.trace.log
164             (
165               "mc-current:~no~MC~open,~current~abscnt
166               =\__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:"
167               ,0
168             )
169           texio.write_nl("")
170         }
171     }
172   {
173     \lua_now:e
174       {
175         ltx.__tag.trace.log
176           (
177             "mc-current:~abscnt=\__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:=="

```

```

178         ..
179         tex.getattribute(luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_cnt_attr)
180         ..
181         "~=>tag="
182         ..
183         tostring
184         (ltx.__tag.func.get_tag_from
185          (tex.getattribute
186           (luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_type_attr)))
187         ..
188         "="
189         ..
190         tex.getattribute
191         (luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_type_attr)
192         ,0
193     )
194     texio.write_nl("")
195 }
196 }
197 }
198 {
199     \msg_note:nn{ tag }{ mc-current }
200 }
201 }
202 }

```

(End of definition for mc-current (show-key). This function is documented on page 40.)

mc-marks (show-key) It maps the mc-marks into the sequences and then shows them. This allows to inspect the first and last mc-Mark on a page. It should only be used in the shipout (header/footer).

```

203 \keys_define:nn { __tag / show }
204 {
205     mc-marks .choice: ,
206     mc-marks / show .code:n =
207     {
208         \__tag_mc_get_marks:
209         \__tag_check_if_mc_in_galley:TF
210         {
211             \iow_term:n {Marks~from~this~page:~}
212         }
213         {
214             \iow_term:n {Marks~from~a~previous~page:~}
215         }
216         \seq_show:N \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq
217         \seq_show:N \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq
218         \__tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing:T
219         {
220             \iow_term:n {BDC~missing~on~this~page!}
221         }
222         \__tag_check_if_mc_tme_missing:T
223         {
224             \iow_term:n {EMC~missing~on~this~page!}
225         }
226     },

```



```

227 mc-marks / use .code:n =
228   {
229     \__tag_mc_get_marks:
230     \__tag_check_if_mc_in_galley:TF
231     { Marks~from~this~page:~}
232     { Marks~from~a~previous~page:~}
233     \seq_use:Nn \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq {,~}\quad
234     \seq_use:Nn \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq {,~}\quad
235     \__tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing:T
236     {
237       BDC~missing~
238     }
239     \__tag_check_if_mc_tme_missing:T
240     {
241       EMC~missing
242     }
243   },
244   mc-marks .default:n = show
245 }

```

(End of definition for mc-marks (show-key). This function is documented on page 40.)

struct-stack (show-key)

```

246 \keys_define:nn { __tag / show }
247   {
248     struct-stack .choice:
249     ,struct-stack / log .code:n = \seq_log:N \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq
250     ,struct-stack / show .code:n = \seq_show:N \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq
251     ,struct-stack .default:n = show
252   }
253 \</package>

```

(End of definition for struct-stack (show-key). This function is documented on page 40.)

debug/structures (show-key)

The following key is available only if the tagpdf-debug package is loaded and shows all structures starting with the one with the number given by the key.

```

254 <*debug>
255 \keys_define:nn { __tag / show }
256   {
257     ,debug/structures .code:n =
258     {
259       \int_step_inline:nnn{#1}{\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}
260       {
261         \msg_term:nneeee
262         { tag/debug } { show-struct }
263         { ##1 }
264         {
265           \prop_map_function:cN
266           {g__tag_struct_debug_##1_prop}
267           \msg_show_item_unbraced:nn
268         }
269         { } { }
270       \msg_term:nneeee
271       { tag/debug } { show-kids }

```

```

272         { ##1 }
273         {
274         \seq_map_function:cN
275           {g__tag_struct_debug_kids_##1_seq}
276           \msg_show_item_unbraced:n
277         }
278         { } { }
279     }
280 }
281 ,debug/structures .default:n = 1
282 }
283 </debug>

```

(End of definition for `debug/structures (show-key)`. This function is documented on page 40.)

13 Commands to extend document commands

The following commands and code parts are not core commands of tagpdf. They either provide work-arounds for missing functionality elsewhere, or do a first step to apply tagpdf commands to document commands. This part should be regularly revisited to check if the code should go to a better place or can be improved.

```
284 <*package>
```

13.1 Document structure

```

\g__tag_root_default_tl
  activate (setup-key)
activate/socket (setup-key)
285 \tl_new:N\g__tag_root_default_tl
286 \tl_gset:Nn\g__tag_root_default_tl {Document}
287
288 \hook_gput_code:nnn{begindocument}{tagpdf}{\tagstructbegin{tag=\g__tag_root_default_tl}}
289 \hook_gput_code:nnn{tagpdf/finish/before}{tagpdf}{\tagstructend}
290
291 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup}
292 {
293   activate/socket .bool_set:N = \l__tag_active_socket_bool,
294   activate .code:n =
295   {
296     \keys_set:nn { __tag / setup }
297     { activate/mc,activate/tree,activate/struct,activate/socket }
298     \tl_gset:Nn\g__tag_root_default_tl {#1}
299   },
300   activate .default:n = Document
301 }
302

```

(End of definition for `\g__tag_root_default_tl`, `activate (setup-key)`, and `activate/socket (setup-key)`. These functions are documented on page 39.)

13.2 Structure destinations

Since TeXlive 2022 pdfTeX and LuaTeX offer support for structure destinations and the pdfmanagement has backend support for. We activate them if structures are actually

created. Structure destinations are actually PDF 2.0 only but they don't harm in older PDF and can improve html export.

```

303 \AddToHook{begindocument/before}
304 {
305   \bool_lazy_and:nnT
306     { \g__tag_active_struct_dest_bool }
307     { \g__tag_active_struct_bool }
308     {
309       \tl_set:Nn \l_pdf_current_structure_destination_tl
310         { {__tag/struct}{\g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl} }
311       \pdf_activate_indexed_structure_destination:
312     }
313 }

```

13.3 Fake space

`\pdffakespace` We need a luatex variant for `\pdffakespace`. This should probably go into the kernel at some time. We also provide a no-op version for dvi mode

```

314 \bool_if:NT \g__tag_mode_lua_bool
315 {
316   \NewDocumentCommand\pdffakespace { }
317   {
318     \__tag_fakespace:
319   }
320 }
321 \providecommand\pdffakespace{}

```

(End of definition for `\pdffakespace`. This function is documented on page 41.)

13.4 Paratagging

The following are some simple commands to enable/disable paratagging. Probably one should add some checks if we are already in a paragraph.

```

\l__tag_para_bool
\l__tag_para_flattened_bool
\l__tag_para_show_bool
\g__tag_para_begin_int
\g__tag_para_end_int
\g__tag_para_main_begin_int
\g__tag_para_main_end_int
\g__tag_para_main_struct_tl
\l__tag_para_tag_default_tl
\l__tag_para_tag_tl
\l__tag_para_main_tag_tl
\l__tag_para_attr_class_tl
\l__tag_para_main_attr_class_tl

```

At first some variables.

```

322 </package>
323 <base>\bool_new:N \l__tag_para_flattened_bool
324 <base>\bool_new:N \l__tag_para_bool
325 <*package>
326 \int_new:N \g__tag_para_begin_int
327 \int_new:N \g__tag_para_end_int
328 \int_new:N \g__tag_para_main_begin_int
329 \int_new:N \g__tag_para_main_end_int

```

this will hold the structure number of the current text-unit.

```

330 \tl_new:N \g__tag_para_main_struct_tl
331 \tl_gset:Nn \g__tag_para_main_struct_tl {1}
332 \tl_new:N \l__tag_para_tag_default_tl
333 \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_para_tag_default_tl { text }
334 \tl_new:N \l__tag_para_tag_tl
335 \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_para_tag_tl { \l__tag_para_tag_default_tl }
336 \tl_new:N \l__tag_para_main_tag_tl
337 \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_para_main_tag_tl {text-unit}

```

this is perhaps already defined by the block code

```
338 \tl_if_exist:NF \l__tag_para_attr_class_tl
339 {\tl_new:N \l__tag_para_attr_class_tl }
340 \tl_new:N \l__tag_para_main_attr_class_tl
```

(End of definition for \l__tag_para_bool and others.)

The global para counter should be set through commands so that `\tag_stop:` can stop them.

```
\__tag_gincr_para_main_begin_int:
\__tag_gincr_para_main_end_int:
\__tag_gincr_para_begin_int:
\__tag_gincr_para_end_int:
341 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_gincr_para_main_begin_int:
342 {
343   \int_gincr:N \g__tag_para_main_begin_int
344 }
345 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_gincr_para_begin_int:
346 {
347   \int_gincr:N \g__tag_para_begin_int
348 }
349 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_gincr_para_main_end_int:
350 {
351   \int_gincr:N \g__tag_para_main_end_int
352 }
353 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_gincr_para_end_int:
354 {
355   \int_gincr:N \g__tag_para_end_int
356 }
```

(End of definition for __tag_gincr_para_main_begin_int: and others.)

```
\__tag_start_para_ints:
\__tag_stop_para_ints:
357 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_start_para_ints:
358 {
359   \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_gincr_para_main_begin_int:
360     {
361       \int_gincr:N \g__tag_para_main_begin_int
362     }
363   \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_gincr_para_begin_int:
364     {
365       \int_gincr:N \g__tag_para_begin_int
366     }
367   \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_gincr_para_main_end_int:
368     {
369       \int_gincr:N \g__tag_para_main_end_int
370     }
371   \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_gincr_para_end_int:
372     {
373       \int_gincr:N \g__tag_para_end_int
374     }
375 }
376 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_stop_para_ints:
377 {
378   \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_gincr_para_main_begin_int:\prg_do_nothing:
379   \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_gincr_para_begin_int:\prg_do_nothing:
380   \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_gincr_para_main_end_int:\prg_do_nothing:
381   \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_gincr_para_end_int:\prg_do_nothing:
382 }
```

(End of definition for `__tag_start_para_ints:` and `__tag_stop_para_ints:`)

We want to be able to inspect the current para main structure, so we need a command to store its structure number

`_tag_para_main_store_struct:`

```
383 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_para_main_store_struct:
384   {
385     \tl_gset:Ne \g__tag_para_main_struct_tl {\int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
386   }
```

(End of definition for `__tag_para_main_store_struct:`)

temporary adaption for the block module:

```
387 \AddToHook{package/latex-lab-testphase-block/after}
388   {
389     \tl_if_exist:NT \l_tag_para_attr_class_tl
390     {
391       \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_para_attr_class_tl { \l_tag_para_attr_class_tl }
392     }
393   }
```

para/tagging (setup-key)

`para/tag` (setup-key)

`para/maintag` (setup-key)

`para/tagging` (tool-key)

`para/tag` (tool-key)

`para/maintag` (tool-key)

`para/flattened` (tool-key)

`unittag` (deprecated)

`para-flattened` (deprecated)

paratagging (deprecated)

`paratagging-show` (deprecated)

`paratag` (deprecated)

These keys enable/disable locally paratagging. Paragraphs are typically tagged with two structure: A main structure around the whole paragraph, and inner structures around the various chunks. Debugging can be activated locally with `debug/show=para`, this can affect the typesetting as the small numbers are boxes and they have a (small) height. Debugging can be deactivated with `debug/show=paraOff` The `para/tag` key sets the tag used by the inner structure, `para/maintag` the tag of the outer structure, both can also be changed with `\tag_tool:n`

```
394 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
395   {
396     para/tagging      .bool_set:N = \l__tag_para_bool,
397     debug/show/para  .code:n = {\bool_set_true:N \l__tag_para_show_bool},
398     debug/show/paraOff .code:n = {\bool_set_false:N \l__tag_para_show_bool},
399     para/tag         .tl_set:N = \l__tag_para_tag_tl,
400     para/maintag     .tl_set:N = \l__tag_para_main_tag_tl,
401     para/flattened   .bool_set:N = \l__tag_para_flattened_bool
402   }
403 \keys_define:nn { tag / tool}
404   {
405     para/tagging     .bool_set:N = \l__tag_para_bool,
406     para/tag         .tl_set:N = \l__tag_para_tag_tl,
407     para/maintag     .tl_set:N = \l__tag_para_main_tag_tl,
408     para/flattened   .bool_set:N = \l__tag_para_flattened_bool
409   }
```

the deprecated names

```
410 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
411   {
412     paratagging      .bool_set:N = \l__tag_para_bool,
413     paratagging-show .bool_set:N = \l__tag_para_show_bool,
414     paratag         .tl_set:N = \l__tag_para_tag_tl
415   }
416 \keys_define:nn { tag / tool}
417   {
418     para      .bool_set:N = \l__tag_para_bool,
```

```

419   paratag .tl_set:N = \l__tag_para_tag_tl,
420   unittag .tl_set:N = \l__tag_para_main_tag_tl,
421   para-flattened .bool_set:N = \l__tag_para_flattened_bool
422 }

```

(End of definition for para/tagging (setup-key) and others. These functions are documented on page 41.)

Helper command for debugging:

```

423 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_para_begin_show:nn #1 #2
424   %#1 color, #2 prefix
425   {
426     \bool_if:NT \l__tag_para_show_bool
427     {
428       \tag_mc_begin:n{artifact}
429       \llap{\color_select:n{#1}\tiny#2\int_use:N\g__tag_para_begin_int\ }
430       \tag_mc_end:
431     }
432   }
433
434 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_check_para_end_show:nn #1 #2
435   %#1 color, #2 prefix
436   {
437     \bool_if:NT \l__tag_para_show_bool
438     {
439       \tag_mc_begin:n{artifact}
440       \rlap{\color_select:n{#1}\tiny\ #2\int_use:N\g__tag_para_end_int}
441       \tag_mc_end:
442     }
443   }

```

The para/begin and para/end code. We have two variants here: a simpler one, which must be used if the block code is not used (and so probably will disappear at some time) and a more sophisticated one that must be used if the block code is used. It is possible that we will need more variants, so we setup a socket so that the code can be easily switched. This code should move into ltagging, so we add a test for the transition.

```

444 \str_if_exist:cF { l__socket_tagsupport/para/begin_plug_str }
445   {
446     \socket_new:nn      {tagsupport/para/begin}{0}
447     \socket_new:nn      {tagsupport/para/end}{0}
448
449     \socket_new_plug:nnn{tagsupport/para/begin}{plain}
450     {
451       \bool_if:NT \l__tag_para_bool
452       {
453         \bool_if:NF \l__tag_para_flattened_bool
454         {
455           \__tag_gincr_para_main_begin_int:
456           \tag_struct_begin:n
457             {
458               tag=\l__tag_para_main_tag_tl,
459             }
460           \__tag_para_main_store_struct:
461         }
462         \__tag_gincr_para_begin_int:

```

```

463         \tag_struct_begin:n {tag=\l__tag_para_tag_tl}
464         \__tag_check_para_begin_show:nn {green}{}
465         \tag_mc_begin:n {}
466     }
467 }
468 \socket_new_plug:nnn{tagsupport/para/begin}{block}
469 {
470     \bool_if:NT \l__tag_para_bool
471     {
472         \legacy_if:nF { @inlabel }
473         {
474             \__tag_check_typeout_v:n
475             {==>~ @endpe = \legacy_if:nTF { @endpe }{true}{false} \on@line }
476             \legacy_if:nF { @endpe }
477             {
478                 \bool_if:NF \l__tag_para_flattened_bool
479                 {
480                     \__tag_gincr_para_main_begin_int:
481                     \tag_struct_begin:n
482                     {
483                         tag=\l__tag_para_main_tag_tl,
484                         attribute-class=\l__tag_para_main_attr_class_tl,
485                     }
486                     \__tag_para_main_store_struct:
487                 }
488             }
489             \__tag_gincr_para_begin_int:
490             \__tag_check_typeout_v:n {==>~increment~ P \on@line }
491             \tag_struct_begin:n
492             {
493                 tag=\l__tag_para_tag_tl
494                 ,attribute-class=\l__tag_para_attr_class_tl
495             }
496             \__tag_check_para_begin_show:nn {green}{\PARALABEL}
497             \tag_mc_begin:n {}
498         }
499     }
500 }

```

there was no real difference between the original and in the block variant, only a debug message. We therefore define only a plain variant.

```

501     \socket_new_plug:nnn{tagsupport/para/end}{plain}
502     {
503         \bool_if:NT \l__tag_para_bool
504         {
505             \__tag_gincr_para_end_int:
506             \__tag_check_typeout_v:n {==>~increment~ /P \on@line }
507             \tag_mc_end:
508             \__tag_check_para_end_show:nn {red}{}
509             \tag_struct_end:
510             \bool_if:NF \l__tag_para_flattened_bool
511             {
512                 \__tag_gincr_para_main_end_int:
513                 \tag_struct_end:

```

```

514         }
515     }
516 }
517 }

```

By default we assign the plain plug:

```

518 \socket_assign_plug:nn { tagsupport/para/begin}{plain}
519 \socket_assign_plug:nn { tagsupport/para/end}{plain}

```

And use the sockets in the hooks. Once tagging sockets exist, this can be adapted.

```

520 \AddToHook{para/begin}{ \socket_use:n { tagsupport/para/begin }
521 }
522 \AddToHook{para/end} { \socket_use:n { tagsupport/para/end } }

```

If the block code is loaded we must ensure that it doesn't overwrite the hook again. And we must reassign the para/begin plug. This can go once the block code no longer tries to adapt the hooks.

```

523 \AddToHook{package/latex-lab-testphase-block/after}
524 {
525     \RemoveFromHook{para/begin}[tagpdf]
526     \RemoveFromHook{para/end}[latex-lab-testphase-block]
527     \AddToHook{para/begin}[tagpdf]
528     {
529         \socket_use:n { tagsupport/para/begin }
530     }
531     \AddToHook{para/end}[tagpdf]
532     {
533         \socket_use:n { tagsupport/para/end }
534     }
535     \socket_assign_plug:nn { tagsupport/para/begin}{block}
536 }
537

```

We check the para count at the end. If tagging is not active it is not a error, but we issue a warning as it perhaps indicates that the testphase code didn't guard everything correctly.

```

538 \AddToHook{enddocument/info}
539 {
540     \tag_if_active:F
541     {
542         \msg_redirect_name:nnn { tag } { para-hook-count-wrong } { warning }
543     }
544     \int_compare:nNnF {\g__tag_para_main_begin_int}={\g__tag_para_main_end_int}
545     {
546         \msg_error:nneee
547         {tag}
548         {para-hook-count-wrong}
549         {\int_use:N\g__tag_para_main_begin_int}
550         {\int_use:N\g__tag_para_main_end_int}
551         {text-unit}
552     }
553     \int_compare:nNnF {\g__tag_para_begin_int}={\g__tag_para_end_int}
554     {
555         \msg_error:nneee
556         {tag}

```



```

557         {para-hook-count-wrong}
558         {\int_use:N\g__tag_para_begin_int}
559         {\int_use:N\g__tag_para_end_int}
560         {text}
561     }
562 }

```

13.5 output routine stuff

We need at least the new-or-1 code. In generic mode we also must insert the code to finish the MC-chunks This part here can go in June 2025

```

563 \ifpackageloaded{footmisc}
564   {\PackageWarning{tagpdf}{tagpdf-has-been-loaded-too-late!}} %
565   {\RequirePackage{latex-lab-testphase-new-or-1}}
566
567 \AddToHook{begindocument/before}
568 {
569   \bool_if:NF \g__tag_mode_lua_bool
570   {
571     \cs_if_exist:NT \@kernel@before@footins
572     {
573       \tl_put_right:Nn \@kernel@before@footins
574       { \tag_mc_add_missing_to_stream:Nn \footins {footnote} }
575       \tl_put_right:Nn \@kernel@tagsupport@makecol
576       {
577         \__tag_check_typeout_v:n {====>~In~\token_to_str:N \@makecol\c_space_tl\the\c@page }
578         \tag_mc_add_missing_to_stream:Nn \@outputbox {main}
579       }
580     }
581   }
582 }
583

```

If the new OR is there, we use it

```

584 \str_if_exist:cT { l_socket_tagsupport/build/column/outputbox_plug_str }
585 {
586   \NewSocketPlug{tagsupport/build/column/outputbox}{tagpdf}
587   {
588     \__tag_check_typeout_v:n {====>~In~\token_to_str:N \@makecol
589     \c_space_tl\the\c@page }
590     \tag_mc_add_missing_to_stream:Nn \@outputbox {main}
591   }
592   \NewSocketPlug{tagsupport/build/column/footins}{tagpdf}
593   { \tag_mc_add_missing_to_stream:Nn \footins {footnote} }
594
595   \bool_if:NF \g__tag_mode_lua_bool
596   {
597     \AssignSocketPlug{tagsupport/build/column/outputbox}{tagpdf}
598     \AssignSocketPlug{tagsupport/build/column/footins}{tagpdf}
599   }
600 }
601 \end{package}

```

`\tagpdfparaOn` This two command switch para mode on and off. `\tagpdfsetup` could be used too but is longer. An alternative is `\tag_tool:n{para/tagging=false}`

```

602 <base>\newcommand\tagpdfparaOn {}
603 <base>\newcommand\tagpdfparaOff{}
604 <*package>
605 \renewcommand\tagpdfparaOn {\bool_set_true:N \l__tag_para_bool}
606 \renewcommand\tagpdfparaOff{\bool_set_false:N \l__tag_para_bool}

```

(End of definition for `\tagpdfparaOn` and `\tagpdfparaOff`. These functions are documented on page 41.)

`\tagpdfsuppressmarks` This command allows to suppress the creation of the marks. It takes an argument which should normally be one of the mc-commands, puts a group around it and suppress the marks creation in this group. This command should be used if the begin and end command are at different boxing levels. E.g.

```

\@hangfrom
{
  \tagstructbegin{tag=H1}%
  \tagmcbegin {tag=H1}%
  #2
}
{#3\tagpdfsuppressmarks{\tagmcbegin}\tagstructend}%

```

```

607 \NewDocumentCommand\tagpdfsuppressmarks{m}
608   {{\use:c{__tag_mc_disable_marks:} #1}}

```

(End of definition for `\tagpdfsuppressmarks`. This function is documented on page 41.)

13.6 Language support

With the following key the lang variable is set. All structures in the current group will then set this lang variable.

`test/lang (setup-key)`

```

609 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
610   {
611     text / lang .tl_set:N = \l__tag_struct_lang_tl
612   }

```

(End of definition for `test/lang (setup-key)`. This function is documented on page ??.)

13.7 Header and footer

Header and footer should normally be tagged as artifacts. The following code requires the new hooks. For now we allow to disable this function, but probably the code should always there at the end. TODO check if Pagination should be changeable.

```

613 \cs_new_protected:Npn\__tag_hook_kernel_before_head:{}
614 \cs_new_protected:Npn\__tag_hook_kernel_after_head:{}
615 \cs_new_protected:Npn\__tag_hook_kernel_before_foot:{}
616 \cs_new_protected:Npn\__tag_hook_kernel_after_foot:{}

```

This can go once the new OR is active (June 2025)

```
617 \AddToHook{begindocument}
618 {
619   \cs_if_exist:NT \@kernel@before@head
620   {
621     \tl_put_right:Nn \@kernel@before@head {\__tag_hook_kernel_before_head:}
622     \tl_put_left:Nn \@kernel@after@head {\__tag_hook_kernel_after_head:}
623     \tl_put_right:Nn \@kernel@before@foot {\__tag_hook_kernel_before_foot:}
624     \tl_put_left:Nn \@kernel@after@foot {\__tag_hook_kernel_after_foot:}
625   }
626 }
```

If the new page sockets exist, we use them.

```
627 \str_if_exist:cT { l__socket_tagsupport/build/page/footer_plug_str }
628 {
629   \NewSocketPlug{tagsupport/build/page/header}{tagpdf}
630   {
631     \__tag_hook_kernel_before_head:
632     #2
633     \__tag_hook_kernel_after_head:
634   }
635
636   \AssignSocketPlug{tagsupport/build/page/header}{tagpdf}
637   \NewSocketPlug{tagsupport/build/page/footer}{tagpdf}
638   {
639     \__tag_hook_kernel_before_foot:
640     #2
641     \__tag_hook_kernel_after_foot:
642   }
643   \AssignSocketPlug{tagsupport/build/page/footer}{tagpdf}
644 }
645
646 \bool_new:N \g__tag_saved_in_mc_bool
647 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_exclude_headfoot_begin:
648 {
649   \bool_set_false:N \l__tag_para_bool
650   \bool_if:NTF \g__tag_mode_lua_bool
651   {
652     \tag_mc_end_push:
653   }
654   {
655     \bool_gset_eq:NN \g__tag_saved_in_mc_bool \g__tag_in_mc_bool
656     \bool_gset_false:N \g__tag_in_mc_bool
657   }
658   \tag_mc_begin:n {artifact}
659   \tag_suspend:n{headfoot}
660 }
661 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_exclude_headfoot_end:
662 {
663   \tag_resume:n{headfoot}
664   \tag_mc_end:
665   \bool_if:NTF \g__tag_mode_lua_bool
666   {
667     \tag_mc_begin_pop:n{}
```

```

668     }
669     {
670     \bool_gset_eq:NN \g__tag_in_mc_bool\g__tag_saved_in_mc_bool
671     }
672 }

```

This version allows to use an Artifact structure

```

673 \__tag_attr_new_entry:nn {__tag/attr/pagination}{/0/Artifact/Type/Pagination}
674 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_exclude_struct_headfoot_begin:n #1
675 {
676     \bool_set_false:N \l__tag_para_bool
677     \bool_if:NTF \g__tag_mode_lua_bool
678     {
679         \tag_mc_end_push:
680     }
681     {
682         \bool_gset_eq:NN \g__tag_saved_in_mc_bool \g__tag_in_mc_bool
683         \bool_gset_false:N \g__tag_in_mc_bool
684     }
685     \tag_struct_begin:n{tag=Artifact,attribute-class=__tag/attr/#1}
686     \tag_mc_begin:n {artifact=#1}
687     \tag_suspend:n{headfoot}
688 }
689
690 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_exclude_struct_headfoot_end:
691 {
692     \tag_resume:n{headfoot}
693     \tag_mc_end:
694     \tag_struct_end:
695     \bool_if:NTF \g__tag_mode_lua_bool
696     {
697         \tag_mc_begin_pop:n{ }
698     }
699     {
700         \bool_gset_eq:NN \g__tag_in_mc_bool\g__tag_saved_in_mc_bool
701     }
702 }

```

And now the keys

page/exclude-header-footer (setup-key)
exclude-header-footer (deprecated)

```

703 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
704 {
705     page/exclude-header-footer .choice:,
706     page/exclude-header-footer / true .code:n =
707     {
708         \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_before_head: \__tag_exclude_headfoot_begin:
709         \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_before_foot: \__tag_exclude_headfoot_begin:
710         \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_after_head: \__tag_exclude_headfoot_end:
711         \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_after_foot: \__tag_exclude_headfoot_end:
712     },
713     page/exclude-header-footer / pagination .code:n =
714     {
715         \cs_set:Nn \__tag_hook_kernel_before_head: { \__tag_exclude_struct_headfoot_begin:n {p
716         \cs_set:Nn \__tag_hook_kernel_before_foot: { \__tag_exclude_struct_headfoot_begin:n {p

```

```

717     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_after_head: \__tag_exclude_struct_headfoot_end:
718     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_after_foot: \__tag_exclude_struct_headfoot_end:
719   },
720   page/exclude-header-footer / false .code:n =
721   {
722     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_before_head: \prg_do_nothing:
723     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_before_foot: \prg_do_nothing:
724     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_after_head: \prg_do_nothing:
725     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_after_foot: \prg_do_nothing:
726   },
727   page/exclude-header-footer .default:n = true,
728   page/exclude-header-footer .initial:n = true,

```

deprecated name

```

729   exclude-header-footer .meta:n = { page/exclude-header-footer = {#1} }
730 }

```

(End of definition for page/exclude-header-footer (setup-key) and exclude-header-footer (deprecated). These functions are documented on page 42.)

A special, experimental tagged version, which only works with fancyhdr or similar that uses parbox

```

731 \AtBeginDocument
732 {
733   \socket_if_exist:nT{tag-support/parbox/before}
734   {
735     \NewTaggingSocketPlug{parbox/before}{tag/footer}
736     {
737       \tag_struct_begin:n{tag=Span}
738       \tag_mc_begin:n{ }
739     }
740
741     \NewTaggingSocketPlug{parbox/after}{tag/footer}
742     {
743       \tag_mc_end:
744       \tag_struct_end:
745     }
746   }
747 }
748
749 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_headfoot_tagged_begin:n #1
750 {
751   \AssignTaggingSocketPlug{parbox/before}{tag/footer}
752   \AssignTaggingSocketPlug{parbox/after}{tag/footer}
753   \bool_set_false:N \l__tag_para_bool
754   \bool_if:NTF \g__tag_mode_lua_bool
755   {
756     \tag_mc_end_push:
757   }
758   {
759     \bool_gset_eq:NN \g__tag_saved_in_mc_bool \g__tag_in_mc_bool
760     \bool_gset_false:N \g__tag_in_mc_bool
761   }
762   \tag_struct_begin:n{tag=Artifact,attribute-class=__tag/attr/#1,parent=\tag_get:n{current}}
763 }
764

```

```

765 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_headfoot_tagged_end:
766 {
767   \tag_struct_end:
768   \bool_if:NTF \g__tag_mode_lua_bool
769     {
770       \tag_mc_begin_pop:n{ }
771     }
772     {
773       \bool_gset_eq:NN \g__tag_in_mc_bool\g__tag_saved_in_mc_bool
774     }
775   }
776 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
777 {
778   page/tag-header-footer .code:n =
779   {
780     \cs_set:Nn \__tag_hook_kernel_before_head: { \__tag_headfoot_tagged_begin:n {pagination
781     \cs_set:Nn \__tag_hook_kernel_before_foot: { \__tag_headfoot_tagged_begin:n {pagination
782     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_after_head: \__tag_headfoot_tagged_end:
783     \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_hook_kernel_after_foot: \__tag_headfoot_tagged_end:
784   }
785 }

```

13.8 Links

We need to close and reopen mc-chunks around links. We handle URI, GoTo (internal) links, GoToR, Launch and Named links. Links should have an alternative text in the Contents key; this is added for normal links by the generic hyperref driver. With luatex we make use of the lualinksplit package to get OBJR of all annotations into the Link structure, so the hook code should not contain the command to insert the OBJR into the structure.

```

786 \bool_lazy_and:nnTF
787 { \sys_if_engine_luatex_p: }
788 {
789   \tl_if_empty_p:e
790   {
791     \lua_now:e
792     { if~ luatexbase.in_callback('pre_shipout_filter','linksplit')~
793       then~else~tex.print('1')~end
794   }
795 }
796 }
797 {
798   \hook_gput_code:nnn
799   {pdfannot/link/URI/before}
800   {tagpdf}
801   {
802     \tag_mc_end_push:
803     \tag_struct_begin:n { tag=Link }
804     \tag_mc_begin:n { tag=Link }
805   }
806
807   \hook_gput_code:nnn
808   {pdfannot/link/URI/after}

```

```

809     {tagpdf}
810     {
811         \tag_mc_end:
812         \tag_struct_end:
813         \tag_mc_begin_pop:n{}}
814     }
815
816 \hook_gput_code:nnn
817 {pdfannot/link/GoTo/before}
818 {tagpdf}
819 {
820     \tag_mc_end_push:
821     \tag_struct_begin:n{tag=Link}
822     \tag_mc_begin:n{tag=Link}
823 }
824
825 \hook_gput_code:nnn
826 {pdfannot/link/GoTo/after}
827 {tagpdf}
828 {
829     \tag_mc_end:
830     \tag_struct_end:
831     \tag_mc_begin_pop:n{}}
832 }
833
834 \hook_gput_code:nnn
835 {pdfannot/link/GoToR/before}
836 {tagpdf}
837 {
838     \tag_mc_end_push:
839     \tag_struct_begin:n{tag=Link}
840     \tag_mc_begin:n{tag=Link}
841 }
842
843 \hook_gput_code:nnn
844 {pdfannot/link/GoToR/after}
845 {tagpdf}
846 {
847     \tag_mc_end:
848     \tag_struct_end:
849     \tag_mc_begin_pop:n{}}
850 }
851 \hook_gput_code:nnn
852 {pdfannot/link/Launch/before}
853 {tagpdf}
854 {
855     \tag_mc_end_push:
856     \tag_struct_begin:n{tag=Link}
857     \tag_mc_begin:n{tag=Link}
858 }
859
860 \hook_gput_code:nnn
861 {pdfannot/link/Launch/after}
862 {tagpdf}

```

```

863     {
864         \tag_mc_end:
865         \tag_struct_end:
866         \tag_mc_begin_pop:n{ }
867     }
868 \hook_gput_code:nnn
869 {pdfannot/link/Named/before}
870 {tagpdf}
871 {
872     \tag_mc_end_push:
873     \tag_struct_begin:n{tag=Link}
874     \tag_mc_begin:n{tag=Link}
875 }
876
877 \hook_gput_code:nnn
878 {pdfannot/link/Named/after}
879 {tagpdf}
880 {
881     \tag_mc_end:
882     \tag_struct_end:
883     \tag_mc_begin_pop:n{ }
884 }
885 }
886 {
887 \hook_gput_code:nnn
888 {pdfannot/link/URI/before}
889 {tagpdf}
890 {
891     \tag_mc_end_push:
892     \tag_struct_begin:n { tag=Link }
893     \tag_mc_begin:n { tag=Link }
894     \pdfannot_dict_put:nne
895     { link/URI }
896     { StructParent }
897     { \tag_struct_parent_int: }
898 }
899
900 \hook_gput_code:nnn
901 {pdfannot/link/URI/after}
902 {tagpdf}
903 {
904     \tag_struct_insert_annot:ee {\pdfannot_link_ref_last:}{\tag_struct_parent_int:}
905     \tag_mc_end:
906     \tag_struct_end:
907     \tag_mc_begin_pop:n{ }
908 }
909
910 \hook_gput_code:nnn
911 {pdfannot/link/GoTo/before}
912 {tagpdf}
913 {
914     \tag_mc_end_push:
915     \tag_struct_begin:n{tag=Link}
916     \tag_mc_begin:n{tag=Link}

```



```

917     \pdfannot_dict_put:nne
918     { link/GoTo }
919     { StructParent }
920     { \tag_struct_parent_int: }
921   }
922
923 \hook_gput_code:nnn
924 {pdfannot/link/GoTo/after}
925 {tagpdf}
926 {
927   \tag_struct_insert_annot:ee {\pdfannot_link_ref_last:}{\tag_struct_parent_int:}
928   \tag_mc_end:
929   \tag_struct_end:
930   \tag_mc_begin_pop:n{ }
931 }
932
933 \hook_gput_code:nnn
934 {pdfannot/link/GoToR/before}
935 {tagpdf}
936 {
937   \tag_mc_end_push:
938   \tag_struct_begin:n{tag=Link}
939   \tag_mc_begin:n{tag=Link}
940   \pdfannot_dict_put:nne
941   { link/GoToR }
942   { StructParent }
943   { \tag_struct_parent_int: }
944 }
945
946 \hook_gput_code:nnn
947 {pdfannot/link/GoToR/after}
948 {tagpdf}
949 {
950   \tag_struct_insert_annot:ee {\pdfannot_link_ref_last:}{\tag_struct_parent_int:}
951   \tag_mc_end:
952   \tag_struct_end:
953   \tag_mc_begin_pop:n{ }
954 }
955
956 \hook_gput_code:nnn
957 {pdfannot/link/Named/before}
958 {tagpdf}
959 {
960   \tag_mc_end_push:
961   \tag_struct_begin:n{tag=Link}
962   \tag_mc_begin:n{tag=Link}
963   \pdfannot_dict_put:nne
964   { link/Named }
965   { StructParent }
966   { \tag_struct_parent_int: }
967 }
968
969 \hook_gput_code:nnn
970 {pdfannot/link/Named/after}

```

```

971     {tagpdf}
972     {
973       \tag_struct_insert_annot:ee {\pdfannot_link_ref_last:}{\tag_struct_parent_int:}
974       \tag_mc_end:
975       \tag_struct_end:
976       \tag_mc_begin_pop:n{ }
977     }
978   \hook_gput_code:nnn
979     {pdfannot/link/Launch/before}
980     {tagpdf}
981     {
982       \tag_mc_end_push:
983       \tag_struct_begin:n{tag=Link}
984       \tag_mc_begin:n{tag=Link}
985       \pdfannot_dict_put:nne
986         { link/Launch }
987         { StructParent }
988         { \tag_struct_parent_int: }
989     }
990
991   \hook_gput_code:nnn
992     {pdfannot/link/Launch/after}
993     {tagpdf}
994     {
995       \tag_struct_insert_annot:ee {\pdfannot_link_ref_last:}{\tag_struct_parent_int:}
996       \tag_mc_end:
997       \tag_struct_end:
998       \tag_mc_begin_pop:n{ }
999     }
1000 }

```

13.9 Attaching css-files for derivation

Derivation to html (https://pdfa.org/wp-content/uploads/2019/06/Deriving_HTML_from_PDF.pdf, implemented by, e.g., ngpdf) can be improved by attaching CSS style definitions in associated files with relationship supplement to the Catalog¹.

Such CSS style definitions can be given in two ways:

- In files with the extension `.css`. Such files should contain only CSS style definitions. ngpdf will store these files and include them with an `<link rel=stylesheet href=...>` in the head of the html.
- In files with the extension `.html`. Such files should contain CSS style definitions inside one (or more) `<style>...</style>` html tags. The content of these files are copied by ngpdf directly into the head of the derived html.

By default (if tagging is active) tagpdf embeds now such CSS style definitions. Currently the list of files is rather short and consists of two files (with extension `.html` and `<style>...</style>` html tags) which are provided by the tagpdf package:

- `latex-align-css.html` which improves the styling of amsmath alignments tagged with MathML.

¹Previously they suggested the StructTreeRoot, but this is not compatible with pdf/A-3

- latex-list-css.html which improves the style of list environments.

It is possible to suppress the embedding of these files by setting the `\tagpdfsetup` key `attach-css` to `false`, `attach-css=true` or `attach-css` reverts this again.

For developers, `\tagpdfsetup` some keys to manipulate the list exist: With `css-list={file1,file2}` the list can be overwritten. `css-list=` clears the list (and so suppresses the embedding too). To remove a file from the list, use `css-list-remove=file`, e.g. `css-list-remove=latex-list-css.html`. To add your own file use `css-list-add=my-fancy-align-css.html`. It is also possible to attach a `.css`-file in this way.

These keys do not affect files added directly with `root-supplemental-file` or `catalog-supplemental-file`.

The files in this list are attached at the end of the compilation but you shouldn't rely on a specific order of the embedding in the html.

We want to avoid to embed files twice, so we use a prop.

```
1001 \prop_new:N \g__tag_css_prop
1002 \prop_gset_from_keyval:Nn \g__tag_css_prop
1003 {
1004   latex-list-css.html=true,
1005   latex-align-css.html=true
1006 }
```

1007

1008

```
1009 \bool_new:N \g__tag_css_bool
1010 \bool_gset_true:N \g__tag_css_bool
```

The files for the catalog must be added before the catalog is pushed.

```
1011 \tl_gput_left:Nn \g__kernel_pdfmanagement_end_run_code_tl
1012 {
1013   \bool_lazy_and:nnT { \g__tag_css_bool }{ \tag_if_active_p: }
1014   {
1015     \prop_map_inline:Nn \g__tag_css_prop
1016     {
1017       \keys_set:nn { __tag / setup }{ catalog-supplemental-file= {#1} }
1018     }
1019   }
1020 }
1021
1022 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
1023 {
1024   attach-css .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_css_bool,
1025   css-list .code:n =
1026   {
1027     \tl_if_empty:nTF{#1}
1028     {\prop_gclear:N \g__tag_css_prop }
1029     {\prop_gput:Nnn \g__tag_css_prop { #1 }{true}}
1030   },
1031   css-list-add .code:n = { \prop_gput:Nnn \g__tag_css_prop { #1 }{true} },
1032   css-list-remove .code:n = { \prop_gremove:Nn \g__tag_css_prop { #1 } },
1033 }
```

</package>

Part IV

The tagpdf-tree module

Commands trees and main dictionaries

Part of the tagpdf package

```
1 <@@=tag>
2 <*header>
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-tree-code} {2025-06-27} {0.99s}
4 {part of tagpdf - code related to writing trees and dictionaries to the pdf}
5 </header>
```

1 Trees, pdfmanagement and finalization code

The code to finish the structure is in a hook. This will perhaps at the end be a kernel hook. TODO check right place for the code The pdfmanagement code is the kernel hook after shipout/lastpage so all code affecting it should be before. Objects can be written later, at least in pdf mode.

```
6 <*package>
7 \hook_gput_code:nnn{begindocument}{tagpdf}
8 {
9   \bool_if:NT \g__tag_active_tree_bool
10    {
11      \sys_if_output_pdf:TF
12      {
13        \AddToHook{enddocument/end} { \__tag_finish_structure: }
14      }
15      {
16        \AddToHook{shipout/lastpage} { \__tag_finish_structure: }
17      }
18    }
19 }
```

1.1 Check structure

__tag_tree_final_checks:

```
20 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_final_checks:
21 {
22   \int_compare:nNnF {\seq_count:N\g__tag_struct_stack_seq}={1}
23   {
24     \msg_warning:nn {tag}{tree-struct-still-open}
25     \int_step_inline:nnn{2}{\seq_count:N\g__tag_struct_stack_seq}
26     {\tag_struct_end:}
27   }
28   \socket_use:n { tag/check/parent-child-end }
29   \msg_note:nn {tag}{tree-statistic}
30 }
```

(End of definition for __tag_tree_final_checks:.)

1.2 Catalog: MarkInfo and StructTreeRoot and OpenAction

The StructTreeRoot and the MarkInfo entry must be added to the catalog. If there is an OpenAction entry we must update it, so that it contains also a structure destination. We do it late so that we can win, but before the pdfmanagement hook.

```
__tag/struct/1 This is the object for the root object, the StructTreeRoot
31 \pdf_object_new_indexed:nn { __tag/struct }{ 1 }
(End of definition for __tag/struct/1.)
```

```
\g__tag_tree_openaction_struct_tl We need a variable that indicates which structure is wanted in the OpenAction. By
default we use 2 (the Document structure).
32 \tl_new:N \g__tag_tree_openaction_struct_tl
33 \tl_gset:Nn \g__tag_tree_openaction_struct_tl { 2 }
(End of definition for \g__tag_tree_openaction_struct_tl.)
```

```
viewer/startstructure (setup-key) We also need an option to setup the start structure. So we setup a key which sets the
variable to the current structure. This still requires hyperref to do most of the job, this
should perhaps be changed.
34 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
35 {
36   viewer/startstructure .code:n =
37   {
38     \tl_gset:Ne \g__tag_tree_openaction_struct_tl {#1}
39   }
40   ,viewer/startstructure .default:n = { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
41 }
```

(End of definition for viewer/startstructure (setup-key). This function is documented on page ??.)

The OpenAction should only be updated if it is there. So we inspect the Catalog-prop:

```
42 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_update_openaction:
43 {
44   \prop_get:cnNT
45   { \__kernel_pdfdict_name:n { g__pdf_Core/Catalog } }
46   {OpenAction}
47   \l__tag_tmpa_tl
48   {
```

we only do something if the OpenAction is an array (as set by hyperref) in other cases we hope that the author knows what they did.

```
49   \tl_if_head_eq_charcode:eNT { \tl_trim_spaces:o { \l__tag_tmpa_tl } } [ %]
50   {
51     \seq_set_split:Nno\l__tag_tmpa_seq {/} { \l__tag_tmpa_tl }
52     \pdfmanagement_add:nne {Catalog} { OpenAction }
53     {
54       <<
55       /S/GoTo \c_space_tl
56       /D~\l__tag_tmpa_tl\c_space_tl
57       /SD~[\pdf_object_ref_indexed:nn{__tag/struct}{\g__tag_tree_openaction_struct
```

there should be always a /Fit etc in the array but better play safe here ...

```

58             \int_compare:nNnTF{ \seq_count:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq } > {1}
59             { /\seq_item:Nn\l__tag_tmpa_seq{2} }
60             { ] }
61         >>
62     }
63 }
64 }
65 }
66 \hook_gput_code:nnn{shipout/lastpage}{tagpdf}
67 {
68     \bool_if:NT \g__tag_active_tree_bool
69     {
70         \pdfmanagement_add:nnn { Catalog / MarkInfo } { Marked } { true }
71         \pdfmanagement_add:nne
72         { Catalog }
73         { StructTreeRoot }
74         { \pdf_object_ref_indexed:nn { __tag/struct } { 1 } }
75         \__tag_tree_update_openaction:
76     }
77 }

```

1.3 Writing the IDtree

The ID are currently quite simple: every structure has an ID build from the prefix ID together with the structure number padded with enough zeros to that we get directly an lexical order. We ship them out in bundles At first a seq to hold the references for the kids

`\g__tag_tree_id_pad_int`

```

78 \int_new:N\g__tag_tree_id_pad_int

```

(End of definition for `\g__tag_tree_id_pad_int`.)

Now we get the needed padding

```

79 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_count:n {e}
80 \hook_gput_code:nnn{begindocument}{tagpdf}
81 {
82     \int_gset:Nn\g__tag_tree_id_pad_int
83     {\tl_count:e { \__tag_property_ref_lastpage:nn{tagstruct}{1000}}+1}
84 }
85

```

This is the main code to write the tree it basically splits the existing structure numbers in chunks of length 50 TODO consider is 50 is a good length.

```

86 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_write_idtree:
87 {
88     \tl_clear:N \l__tag_tmpa_tl
89     \tl_clear:N \l__tag_tmpb_tl
90     \int_zero:N \l__tag_tmpa_int
91     \int_step_inline:nnn {2} {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}
92     {
93         \int_incr:N\l__tag_tmpa_int
94         \tl_put_right:Ne \l__tag_tmpa_tl

```

```

95     {
96     \__tag_struct_get_id:n{##1}~\pdf_object_ref_indexed:nn {__tag/struct}{##1}~
97     }
98 \int_compare:nNnF {\l__tag_tmpa_int}<{50} %
99     {
100     \pdf_object_unnamed_write:ne {dict}
101     { /Limits~[\__tag_struct_get_id:n{##1}~\l__tag_tmpa_int+1}~\__tag_struct_get_id:
102     /Names~[\l__tag_tmpa_tl]
103     }
104     \tl_put_right:Ne\l__tag_tmpb_tl {\pdf_object_ref_last:\c_space_tl}
105     \int_zero:N \l__tag_tmpa_int
106     \tl_clear:N \l__tag_tmpa_tl
107     }
108 }
109 \tl_if_empty:NF \l__tag_tmpa_tl
110 {
111     \pdf_object_unnamed_write:ne {dict}
112     {
113     /Limits~
114     [ \__tag_struct_get_id:n{\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int~\l__tag_tmpa_int+1}~
115     \__tag_struct_get_id:n{\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}]
116     /Names~[\l__tag_tmpa_tl]
117     }
118     \tl_put_right:Ne\l__tag_tmpb_tl {\pdf_object_ref_last:}
119 }
120 \pdf_object_unnamed_write:ne {dict}{/Kids~[\l__tag_tmpb_tl]}
121 \__tag_prop_gput:cne
122 { g__tag_struct_1_prop }
123 { IDTree }
124 { \pdf_object_ref_last: }
125 }

```

1.4 Writing structure elements

The following commands are needed to write out the structure.

`__tag_tree_write_structtreeroot:` This writes out the root object.

```

126 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_write_structtreeroot:
127 {
128     \__tag_prop_gput:cne
129     { g__tag_struct_1_prop }
130     { ParentTree }
131     { \pdf_object_ref:n { __tag/tree/parenttree } }
132     \__tag_prop_gput:cne
133     { g__tag_struct_1_prop }
134     { RoleMap }
135     { \pdf_object_ref:n { __tag/tree/rolemap } }
136     \__tag_struct_fill_kid_key:n { 1 }
137     \prop_gremove:cn { g__tag_struct_1_prop } {S}
138     \__tag_struct_get_dict_content:nN { 1 } \l__tag_tmpa_tl
139     \pdf_object_write_indexed:nnne
140     { __tag/struct } { 1 }
141     {dict}
142     {

```

```

143         \l__tag_tmpa_tl
144     }

```

Better put S back, see <https://github.com/latex3/tagging-project/issues/86>

```

145     \prop_gput:cnn { g__tag_struct_1_prop } {S}{ /StructTreeRoot }
146 }

```

(End of definition for `__tag_tree_write_structtreeroot:`.)

`__tag_tree_write_structelems:` This writes out the other struct elems, the absolute number is in the counter.

```

147 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_write_structelems:
148 {
149     \int_step_inline:nnnn {2}{1}{\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}
150     {
151         \__tag_struct_write_obj:n { ##1 }
152     }
153 }

```

(End of definition for `__tag_tree_write_structelems:`.)

1.5 ParentTree

`__tag/tree/parenttree` The object which will hold the parenttree

```

154 \pdf_object_new:n { __tag/tree/parenttree }

```

(End of definition for `__tag/tree/parenttree:`.)

The ParentTree maps numbers to objects or (if the number represents a page) to arrays of objects. The numbers refer to two distinct types of entries: page streams and real objects like annotations. The numbers must be distinct and ordered. So we rely on `abspage` for the pages and put the real objects at the end. We use a counter to have a chance to get the correct number if code is processed twice.

`\c@g__tag_parenttree_obj_int` This is a counter for the real objects. It starts at the absolute last page value. It relies on `l3ref`.

```

155 \int_new:N \c@g__tag_parenttree_obj_int
156 \hook_gput_code:nnn{begindocument}{tagpdf}
157 {
158     \int_gset:Nn
159         \c@g__tag_parenttree_obj_int
160         { \__tag_property_ref_lastpage:nn{abspage}{100} }
161 }

```

(End of definition for `\c@g__tag_parenttree_obj_int:`.)

We store the number/object references in a `tl-var`. If more structure is needed one could switch to a `seq`.

`\g__tag_parenttree_objr_tl`

```

162 \tl_new:N \g__tag_parenttree_objr_tl

```

(End of definition for `\g__tag_parenttree_objr_tl:`.)

`_tag_parenttree_add_objr:nn` This command stores a StructParent number and a objref into the tl var. This is only for objects like annotations, pages are handled elsewhere.

```

163 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_parenttree_add_objr:nn #1 #2 %#1 StructParent number, #2 objref
164 {
165   \tl_gput_right:Ne \g__tag_parenttree_objr_tl
166   {
167     #1 \c_space_tl #2 ^^J
168   }
169 }

```

(End of definition for `_tag_parenttree_add_objr:nn`.)

`\l__tag_parenttree_content_tl` A tl-var which will get the page related parenttree content.

```

170 \tl_new:N \l__tag_parenttree_content_tl

```

(End of definition for `\l__tag_parenttree_content_tl`.)

`_tag_tree_fill_parenttree:` This is the main command to assemble the page related entries of the parent tree. It wanders through the pages and the mcid numbers and collects all mcid of one page.

```

171 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_tree_parenttree_rerun_msg: {}
172 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_tree_fill_parenttree:
173 {
174   \int_step_inline:nnnn{1}{1}{\_tag_property_ref_lastpage:nn{abspage}{-1}} %not quite clear
175   { %page ##1
176     \prop_clear:N \l__tag_tmpa_prop
177     \int_step_inline:nnnn{1}{1}{\_tag_property_ref_lastpage:nn{tagmcabs}{-
178     1}}
179     {
180       %mcid###1
181       \int_compare:nT
182       {\property_ref:enn{mcid-###1}{tagabspace}{-1}=##1} %mcid is on current page
183       {% yes
184         \prop_get:NnNT
185         \g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop
186         {###1}
187         \l__tag_tmpa_tl
188         {
189           \prop_put:Nee
190           \l__tag_tmpa_prop
191           {\property_ref:enn{mcid-###1}{tagmcid}{-1}}
192           {\l__tag_tmpa_tl}
193         }
194       }
195     }
196     \tl_put_right:Ne\l__tag_parenttree_content_tl
197     {
198       \int_eval:n {##1-1}\c_space_tl
199       [\c_space_tl %]
200     }
201     \int_step_inline:nnnn %###1
202     {0}
203     {1}
204     { \prop_count:N \l__tag_tmpa_prop -1 }
205     {

```

```

205     \prop_get:NnNTF \l__tag_tmpa_prop {###1} \l__tag_tmpa_tl
206     {% page#1:mcid##1:\l__tag_tmpa_tl :content
207     \tl_put_right:Ne \l__tag_parenttree_content_tl
208     {
209         \prop_if_exist:cTF { g__tag_struct_ \l__tag_tmpa_tl _prop }
210         {
211             \pdf_object_ref_indexed:nn { __tag/struct }{ \l__tag_tmpa_tl }
212         }
213         {
214             null
215         }
216         \c_space_tl
217     }
218 }
219 {
220     \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_parenttree_rerun_msg:
221     {
222         \msg_warning:nn { tag } {tree-mcid-index-wrong}
223     }
224 }
225 }
226 \tl_put_right:Nn
227 \l__tag_parenttree_content_tl
228 {%[
229 ]^^J
230 }
231 }
232 }

```

(End of definition for __tag_tree_fill_parenttree:.)

__tag_tree_lua_fill_parenttree: This is a special variant for luatex. lua mode must/can do it differently.

```

233 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_lua_fill_parenttree:
234 {
235     \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_parenttree_content_tl
236     {
237         \lua_now:e
238         {
239             ltx.__tag.func.output_parenttree
240             (
241                 \int_use:N\g_shipout_readonly_int
242             )
243         }
244     }
245 }

```

(End of definition for __tag_tree_lua_fill_parenttree:.)

__tag_tree_write_parenttree: This combines the two parts and writes out the object. TODO should the check for lua be moved into the backend code?

```

246 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_write_parenttree:
247 {
248     \bool_if:NTF \g__tag_mode_lua_bool
249     {

```

```

250     \__tag_tree_lua_fill_parenttree:
251     }
252     {
253     \__tag_tree_fill_parenttree:
254     }
255     \__tag_tree_parenttree_rerun_msg:
256     \tl_put_right:No \l__tag_parenttree_content_tl { \g__tag_parenttree_objr_tl }
257     \pdf_object_write:nne { __tag/tree/parenttree }{dict}
258     {
259     /Nums\c_space_tl [\l__tag_parenttree_content_tl]
260     }
261 }

```

(End of definition for __tag_tree_write_parenttree:.)

1.6 Rolemap dictionary

The Rolemap dictionary describes relations between new tags and standard types. The main part here is handled in the role module, here we only define the command which writes it to the PDF.

`__tag/tree/rolemap` At first we reserve again an object. Rolemap is also used in PDF 2.0 as a fallback.

```

262 \pdf_object_new:n { __tag/tree/rolemap }

```

(End of definition for __tag/tree/rolemap.)

`__tag_tree_write_rolemap:` This writes out the rolemap, basically it simply pushes out the dictionary which has been filled in the role module.

```

263 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_write_rolemap:
264 {
265   \bool_if:NT \g__tag_role_add_mathml_bool
266   {
267     \prop_map_inline:Nn \g__tag_role_NS_mathml_prop
268     {
269       \prop_gput:Nnn \g__tag_role_rolemap_prop {##1}{Span}
270     }
271   }
272   \prop_map_inline:Nn \g__tag_role_rolemap_prop
273   {
274     \tl_if_eq:nnF {##1}{##2}
275     {
276       \pdfdict_gput:nne {g__tag_role/RoleMap_dict}
277       {##1}
278       {\pdf_name_from_unicode_e:n{##2}}
279     }
280   }
281   \pdf_object_write:nne { __tag/tree/rolemap }{dict}
282   {
283     \pdfdict_use:n{g__tag_role/RoleMap_dict}
284   }
285 }

```

(End of definition for __tag_tree_write_rolemap:.)

1.7 Classmap dictionary

Classmap and attributes are setup in the struct module, here is only the code to write it out. It should only done if values have been used.

```
\__tag_tree_write_classmap:
```

```
286 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_write_classmap:
287   {
288     \tl_clear:N \l__tag_tmpa_tl
289     \seq_map_inline:Nn \g__tag_attr_class_used_seq
290     {
291       \prop_gput:Nnn \g__tag_attr_class_used_prop {##1}{ }
292     }
293     \prop_map_inline:Nn \g__tag_attr_class_used_prop
294     {
295       \prop_get:NnNT \g__tag_attr_entries_prop {##1} \l__tag_tmpb_tl
296       {
297         \tl_put_right:Ne \l__tag_tmpa_tl
298         {
299           ##1\c_space_tl
300           <<
301           \l__tag_tmpb_tl
302           >>
303           \iow_newline:
304         }
305       }
306     }
307     \tl_if_empty:NF
308     \l__tag_tmpa_tl
309     {
310       \pdf_object_new:n { __tag/tree/classmap }
311       \pdf_object_write:nne
312       { __tag/tree/classmap }
313       {dict}
314       { \l__tag_tmpa_tl }
315       \__tag_prop_gput:cne
316       { g__tag_struct_1_prop }
317       { ClassMap }
318       { \pdf_object_ref:n { __tag/tree/classmap } } }
319     }
320   }
```

(End of definition for __tag_tree_write_classmap:.)

1.8 Namespaces

Namespaces are handle in the role module, here is the code to write them out. Namespaces are only relevant for pdf2.0.

```
__tag/tree/namespaces
```

```
321 \pdf_object_new:n { __tag/tree/namespaces }
```

(End of definition for `__tag/tree/namespaces`.)

`__tag_tree_write_namespaces:`

```
322 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_tree_write_namespaces:
323   {
324     \pdf_version_compare:NnF < {2.0}
325     {
326       \prop_map_inline:Nn \g__tag_role_NS_prop
327       {
328         \pdfdict_if_empty:nF {g__tag_role/RoleMapNS_##1_dict}
329         {
330           \pdf_object_write:nne {__tag/RoleMapNS/##1}{dict}
331           {
332             \pdfdict_use:n {g__tag_role/RoleMapNS_##1_dict}
333           }
334           \pdfdict_gput:nne{g__tag_role/RoleMapNS/##1}{dict}
335           {RoleMapNS}{\pdf_object_ref:n {__tag/RoleMapNS/##1}}
336         }
337         \pdf_object_write:nne{tag/NS/##1}{dict}
338         {
339           \pdfdict_use:n {g__tag_role/RoleMapNS_##1_dict}
340         }
341       }
342       \pdf_object_write:nne {__tag/tree/namespaces}{array}
343       {
344         \prop_map_tokens:Nn \g__tag_role_NS_prop{\use_ii:nn}
345       }
346     }
347   }
```

(End of definition for `__tag_tree_write_namespaces:`.)

1.9 Finishing the structure

This assembles the various parts. TODO (when tabular are done or if someone requests it): IDTree

`__tag_finish_structure:`

```
348 \hook_new:n {tagpdf/finish/before}
349 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_finish_structure:
350   {
351     \bool_if:NT\g__tag_active_tree_bool
352     {
353       \hook_use:n {tagpdf/finish/before}
354       \__tag_tree_final_checks:
355       \iow_term:n{Package~tagpdf~Info:~writing~ParentTree}
356       \__tag_check_benchmark_tic:
357       \__tag_tree_write_parenttree:
358       \__tag_check_benchmark_toc:
359       \iow_term:n{Package~tagpdf~Info:~writing~IDTree}
360       \__tag_check_benchmark_tic:
361       \__tag_tree_write_idtree:
362       \__tag_check_benchmark_toc:
363       \iow_term:n{Package~tagpdf~Info:~writing~RoleMap}
```

```

364     \_tag_check_benchmark_tic:
365     \_tag_tree_write_rolemap:
366     \_tag_check_benchmark_toc:
367     \iow_term:n{Package~tagpdf~Info:~writing~ClassMap}
368     \_tag_check_benchmark_tic:
369     \_tag_tree_write_classmap:
370     \_tag_check_benchmark_toc:
371     \iow_term:n{Package~tagpdf~Info:~writing~NameSpaces}
372     \_tag_check_benchmark_tic:
373     \_tag_tree_write_namespaces:
374     \_tag_check_benchmark_toc:
375     \iow_term:n{Package~tagpdf~Info:~writing~StructElems}
376     \_tag_check_benchmark_tic:
377     \_tag_tree_write_structelements: %this is rather slow!!
378     \_tag_check_benchmark_toc:
379     \iow_term:n{Package~tagpdf~Info:~writing~Root}
380     \_tag_check_benchmark_tic:
381     \_tag_tree_write_structtreeroot:
382     \_tag_check_benchmark_toc:
383   }
384 }
385 \end{package}

```

(End of definition for _tag_finish_structure.)

1.10 StructParents entry for Page

We need to add to the Page resources the StructParents entry, this is simply the absolute page number.

```

386 \begin{package}
387 \hook_gput_code:nnn{begindocument}{tagpdf}
388 {
389   \bool_if:NT\g__tag_active_tree_bool
390   {
391     \hook_gput_code:nnn{shipout/before} { tagpdf/structparents }
392     {
393       \pdfmanagement_add:nne
394         { Page }
395         { StructParents }
396         { \int_eval:n { \g_shipout_readonly_int } }
397     }
398   }
399 }
400 \end{package}

```

Part V

The `tagpdf-mc-shared` module

Code related to Marked Content (mc-chunks), code shared by all modes

Part of the `tagpdf` package

1 Public Commands

<code>\tag_mc_begin:n</code>	<code>\tag_mc_begin:n {<key-values>}</code>
<code>\tag_mc_end:</code>	<code>\tag_mc_end:</code>

These commands insert the end code of the marked content. They don't end a group and in generic mode it doesn't matter if they are in another group as the starting commands. In generic mode both commands check if they are correctly nested and issue a warning if not.

<code>\tag_mc_use:n</code>	<code>\tag_mc_use:n {<label>}</code>
----------------------------	--

These command allow to record a marked content that was stashed away before into the current structure. A marked content can be used only once – the command will issue a warning if an mc is use a second time.

<code>\tag_mc_artifact_group_begin:n</code>	<code>\tag_mc_artifact_group_begin:n {<name>}</code>
<code>\tag_mc_artifact_group_end:</code>	<code>\tag_mc_artifact_group_end:</code>

This command pair creates a group with an artifact marker at the begin and the end. Inside the group the tagging commands are disabled. It allows to mark a complete region as artifact without having to worry about user commands with tagging commands. `<name>` should be a value allowed also for the `artifact` key. It pushes and pops mc-chunks at the begin and end. TODO: document is in `tagpdf.tex`

<code>\tag_mc_end_push:</code>	<code>\tag_mc_end_push:</code>
<code>\tag_mc_begin_pop:n</code>	<code>\tag_mc_begin_pop:n {<key-values>}</code>

New: 2021-04-22 If there is an open mc chunk, `\tag_mc_end_push:` ends it and pushes its tag of the (global) stack. If there is no open chunk, it puts `-1` on the stack (for debugging) `\tag_mc_begin_pop:n` removes a value from the stack. If it is different from `-1` it opens a tag with it. The reopened mc chunk loses info like the alt text for now.

<code>\tag_mc_if_in_p: *</code>	<code>\tag_mc_if_in:TF {<true code>} {<false code>}</code>
<code>\tag_mc_if_in:TF *</code>	Determines if a mc-chunk is open.

<code>\tag_mc_reset_box:N *</code>	<code>\tag_mc_reset_box:N <box></code>
------------------------------------	--

New: 2023-06-11 This resets in lua mode the mc attributes to the one currently in use. It does nothing in generic mode.

`\tag_mc_add_missing_to_stream:Nn \tag_mc_add_missing_to_stream:Nn <box> {<stream name>}`

New: 2024-11-18

This command is only needed in generic mode, in lua mode it gobbles its arguments. In generic mode it adds MC literals to the stream that are missing because of page breaks. The first argument is the box with the stream, the second a string representing the stream. Predeclared are the names `main`, `footnote` and `multicol`. If more streams should be handle the underlying interface must be enabled with `\tag_mc_new_stream:n`. The command is only for packages doing deep manipulations of the output routine! Example of use are in the `multicol` package and in `tagpdf` itself.

`\tag_mc_new_stream:n \tag_mc_new_stream:n {<stream name>}`

New: 2024-11-18

This declares the interface needed to handle a new stream with `\tag_mc_add_missing_to_stream:Nn`. Predeclared are the names `main`, `footnote` and `multicol`.

2 Public keys

The following keys can be used with `\tag_mc_begin:n`, `\tagmcbegin`, `\tag_mc_begin_pop:n`,

tag (mc-key) This key is required, unless `artifact` is used. The value is a tag like `P` or `H1` without a slash at the begin, this is added by the code. It is possible to setup new tags. The value of the key is expanded, so it can be a command. The expansion is passed unchanged to the PDF, so it should with a starting slash give a valid PDF name (some ascii with numbers like `H4` is fine).

artifact (mc-key) This will setup the marked content as an artifact. The key should be used for content that should be ignored. The key can take one of the values `pagination`, `layout`, `page`, `background` and `notype` (this is the default).

raw (mc-key) This key allows to add more entries to the properties dictionary. The value must be correct, low-level PDF. E.g. `raw=/Alt (Hello)` will insert an alternative Text.

alt (mc-key) This key inserts an `/Alt` value in the property dictionary of the BDC operator. The value is handled as verbatim string, commands are not expanded. The value will be expanded first once. If it is empty, nothing will happen.

actualtext (mc-key) This key inserts an `/ActualText` value in the property dictionary of the BDC operator. The value is handled as verbatim string, commands are not expanded. The value will be expanded first once. If it is empty, nothing will happen.

label (mc-key) This key sets a label by which one can call the marked content later in another structure (if it has been stashed with the `stash` key). Internally the label name will start with `tagpdf-`.

stash (mc-key) This “stashes” an mc-chunk: it is not inserted into the current structure. It should be normally be used along with a label to be able to use the mc-chunk in another place.

The code is split into three parts: code shared by all engines, code specific to luamode and code not used by luamode.

3 Marked content code – shared

```

1 <@@=tag>
2 <*header>
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-mc-code-shared} {2025-06-27} {0.99s}
4   {part of tagpdf - code related to marking chunks -
5     code shared by generic and luamode }
6 </header>

```

3.1 Variables and counters

MC chunks must be counted. I use a latex counter for the absolute count, so that it is added to `\c1@ckpt` and restored e.g. in `tabulars` and `align`. `\int_new:N \c@g_@@_MCID_abs_int` and `\tl_put_right:Nn\c1@ckpt{\@elt{g_@@_MCID_abs_int}}` would work too, but as the name is not `expl3` then too, why bother? The absolute counter can be used to label and to check if the page counter needs a reset.

`g__tag_MCID_abs_int`

```

7 <*base>
8 \newcounter { g__tag_MCID_abs_int }

```

(End of definition for g__tag_MCID_abs_int.)

`__tag_get_data_mc_counter:`

This command allows `\tag_get:n` to get the current state of the mc counter with the keyword `mc_counter`. By comparing the numbers it can be used to check the number of structure commands in a piece of code.

```

9 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_get_data_mc_counter:
10   {
11     \int_use:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int
12   }
13 </base>

```

(End of definition for __tag_get_data_mc_counter:.)

`__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:`

A (expandable) function to get the current value of the cnt. TODO: duplicate of the previous one, this should be cleaned up.

```

14 <*shared>
15 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt: { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int }

```

(End of definition for __tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:.)

`\g__tag_in_mc_bool`

This booleans record if a mc is open, to test nesting.

```

16 \bool_new:N \g__tag_in_mc_bool

```

(End of definition for \g__tag_in_mc_bool.)

`\g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop` For every chunk we need to know the structure it is in, to record this in the parent tree. We store this in a property.
 key: absolute number of the mc (tagmcabs)
 value: the structure number the mc is in
`17 __tag_prop_new_linked:N \g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop`
(End of definition for \g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop.)

`\g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop` Some commands (e.g. links) want to close a previous mc and reopen it after they did their work. For this we create a stack:
`18 \seq_new:N \g__tag_mc_stack_seq`
(End of definition for \g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop.)

`\l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl` Artifacts can have various types like Pagination or Layout. This stored in this variable.
`19 \tl_new:N \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl`
(End of definition for \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl.)

`\l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool` This booleans store the stash and artifact status of the mc-chunk.
`\l__tag_mc_artifact_bool`
`20 \bool_new:N \l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool`
`21 \bool_new:N \l__tag_mc_artifact_bool`
(End of definition for \l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool and \l__tag_mc_artifact_bool.)

`\l__tag_mc_lang_tl` a variable to set a Lang on the mc. This is not conforming to the spec! But it seems to work in acrobat.
`22 \tl_new:N \l__tag_mc_lang_tl`
(End of definition for \l__tag_mc_lang_tl.)

`\l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl` Variables used by the keys. `\l__@@_mc_key_properties_tl` will collect a number of values. TODO: should this be a pdfdict now?
`\g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl`
`\l__tag_mc_key_label_tl`
`\l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl`
`23 \tl_new:N \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl`
`24 \tl_new:N \g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl`
`25 \tl_new:N \l__tag_mc_key_label_tl`
`26 \tl_new:N \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl`
(End of definition for \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl and others.)

3.2 Functions

`__tag_mc_handle_mc_label:e` The commands labels a mc-chunk. It is used if the user explicitly labels the mc-chunk with the `label` key. The argument is the value provided by the user. It stores the attributes
tagabspage: the absolute page, `\g_shipout_readonly_int`,
tagmcabs: the absolute mc-counter `\c@g_@@_MCID_abs_int`. The reference command is based on `l3ref`.
`27 \cs_new:Npn __tag_mc_handle_mc_label:e #1`
`28 {`
`29 __tag_property_record:en{tagpdf-#1}{tagabspage,tagmcabs}`
`30 }`
(End of definition for __tag_mc_handle_mc_label:e)

`_tag_mc_set_label_used:n` Unlike with structures we can't check if a labeled mc has been used by looking at the P key, so we use a dedicated csname for the test

```

31 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_mc_set_label_used:n #1 % #1 labelname
32 {
33   \tl_new:c { g__tag_mc_label_\tl_to_str:n{#1}_used_tl }
34 }
35 </shared>

```

(End of definition for `_tag_mc_set_label_used:n`.)

`\tag_mc_use:n` These command allow to record a marked content that was stashed away before into the current structure. A marked content can be used only once – the command will issue a warning if an mc is use a second time. The argument is a label name set with the `label` key.

TODO: is testing for struct the right test?

```

36 <base>\cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_mc_use:n #1 { \_tag_whatsits: }
37 <*shared>
38 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_mc_use:n #1 % #1: label name
39 {
40   \_tag_check_if_active_struct:T
41   {
42     \tl_set:Nc \l__tag_tmpa_tl { \property_ref:nnn{tagpdf-#1}{tagmcabs}{ } }
43     \tl_if_empty:NTF\l__tag_tmpa_tl
44     {
45       \msg_warning:nnn {tag} {mc-label-unknown} {#1}
46     }
47     {
48       \cs_if_free:cTF { g__tag_mc_label_\tl_to_str:n{#1}_used_tl }
49       {
50         \_tag_mc_handle_stash:e { \l__tag_tmpa_tl }
51         \_tag_mc_set_label_used:n {#1}
52       }
53       {
54         \msg_warning:nnn {tag}{mc-used-twice}{#1}
55       }
56     }
57   }
58 }
59 </shared>

```

(End of definition for `\tag_mc_use:n`. This function is documented on page 79.)

`\tag_mc_artifact_group_begin:n` This opens an artifact of the type given in the argument, and then stops all tagging. It
`\tag_mc_artifact_group_end:` creates a group. It pushes and pops mc-chunks at the begin and end.

```

60 <base>\cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_mc_artifact_group_begin:n #1 {}
61 <base>\cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_mc_artifact_group_end: {}
62 <*shared>
63 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_mc_artifact_group_begin:n #1
64 {
65   \tag_mc_end_push:
66   \tag_mc_begin:n {artifact=#1}
67   \group_begin:
68   \tag_suspend:n{artifact-group}
69 }

```

```

70
71 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_mc_artifact_group_end:
72 {
73   \tag_resume:n{artifact-group}
74   \group_end:
75   \tag_mc_end:
76   \tag_mc_begin_pop:n{ }
77 }
78 </shared>

```

(End of definition for \tag_mc_artifact_group_begin:n and \tag_mc_artifact_group_end:. These functions are documented on page 79.)

\tag_mc_reset_box:N This allows to reset the mc-attributes in box. On base and generic mode it should do nothing.

```

79 <base>\cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_mc_reset_box:N #1 { }

```

(End of definition for \tag_mc_reset_box:N. This function is documented on page 79.)

\tag_mc_end_push:
\tag_mc_begin_pop:n

```

80 <base>\cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_mc_end_push: { }
81 <base>\cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_mc_begin_pop:n #1 { }
82 <*shared>
83 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_mc_end_push:
84 {
85   \__tag_check_if_active_mc:T
86   {
87     \__tag_mc_if_in:TF
88     {
89       \seq_gpush:Ne \g__tag_mc_stack_seq { \tag_get:n {mc_tag} }
90       \__tag_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn
91         { pushed }
92         { \tag_get:n {mc_tag} }
93       \tag_mc_end:
94     }
95     {
96       \seq_gpush:Nn \g__tag_mc_stack_seq {-1}
97       \__tag_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn { pushed }{-1}
98     }
99   }
100 }
101
102 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_mc_begin_pop:n #1
103 {
104   \__tag_check_if_active_mc:T
105   {
106     \seq_gpop:NNTF \g__tag_mc_stack_seq \l__tag_tmpa_tl
107     {
108       \tl_if_eq:NnTF \l__tag_tmpa_tl {-1}
109       {
110         \__tag_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn {popped}{-1}
111       }
112       {
113         \__tag_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn {popped}{\l__tag_tmpa_tl}
114         \tag_mc_begin:n {tag=\l__tag_tmpa_tl,#1}

```

```

115         }
116     }
117     {
118         \__tag_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn {popped}{empty~stack,~nothing}
119     }
120 }
121 }

```

(End of definition for \tag_mc_end_push: and \tag_mc_begin_pop:n. These functions are documented on page 79.)

__tag_mc_check_parent_child:n This checks if an MC can be used in a structure.

```

122 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_check_parent_child:n #1
123 % #1 structure number of parent
124 {

```

This records if logging is on

```

125     \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_loglevel_int} > { 0 }
126     {
127         \prop_get:cnN{g__tag_struct_#1_prop}{tag}\l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl
128         \msg_note:nnee
129         { tag }
130         { role-parent-child-check }
131         {
132             \quark_if_no_value:NTF \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl
133             {??}
134             {
135                 \exp_last_unbraced:No\use_ii:nn
136                 { \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl }
137                 :
138                 \exp_last_unbraced:No\use_i:nn
139                 { \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl }
140             }
141         }
142         {
143             MC~(real~content)
144         }
145     }
146     \__tag_struct_get_role:nnNN
147     {#1}
148     {rolemap}
149     \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl
150     \l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl
151     \__tag_role_check_parent_child:ooooN
152     { \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl }
153     { \l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl }
154     { MC } %
155     { } %
156     \l__tag_parent_child_check_tl

```

if the return value is 7 we have to check against the parentrole field. TODO ruby and warichu use 7 too, that should be changed!

```

157     \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_parent_child_check_tl} = { \c__tag_role_rule_checkparent_tl }
158     {
159         \__tag_struct_get_role:nnNN

```

```

160     {#1}
161     {parentrole}
162     \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl
163     \l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl
164     \__tag_role_check_parent_child:ooooN
165     { \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl }
166     { \l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl }
167     { MC } %
168     { } %
169     \l__tag_parent_child_check_tl
170   }
171   \__tag_check_forbidden_parent_child:nnee
172   {\l__tag_parent_child_check_tl}
173   {#1}
174   {
175     \l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl : \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl
176   }
177   {
178     MC~(real content)
179   }
180 }
181 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_mc_check_parent_child:n {o}

```

(End of definition for __tag_mc_check_parent_child:n.)

3.3 Keys

This are the keys where the code can be shared between the modes.

stash (mc-key) the two internal artifact keys are use to define the public artifact. For now we add support for the subtypes Header and Footer. Watermark,PageNum, LineNum,Redaction,Bates will be added if some use case emerges. If some use case for /BBox and /Attached emerges, it will be perhaps necessary to adapt the code.

__artifact-bool
__artifact-type

```

182 \keys_define:nn { __tag / mc }
183 {
184   stash .bool_set:N = \l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool,
185   __artifact-bool .bool_set:N = \l__tag_mc_artifact_bool,
186   __artifact-type .choice:,
187   __artifact-type / pagination .code:n =
188   {
189     \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl { Pagination }
190   },
191   __artifact-type / pagination/header .code:n =
192   {
193     \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl { Pagination/Subtype/Header }
194   },
195   __artifact-type / pagination/footer .code:n =
196   {
197     \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl { Pagination/Subtype/Footer }
198   },
199   __artifact-type / layout .code:n =
200   {
201     \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl { Layout }
202   },

```

```

203  __artifact-type / page      .code:n    =
204  {
205    \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl { Page }
206  },
207  __artifact-type / background .code:n    =
208  {
209    \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl { Background }
210  },
211  __artifact-type / notype     .code:n    =
212  {
213    \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl {}
214  },
215  __artifact-type /           .code:n    =
216  {
217    \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl {}
218  },
219  }

```

(End of definition for stash (mc-key), __artifact-bool, and __artifact-type. This function is documented on page 81.)

```

220 </shared>

```

Part VI

The tagpdf-mc-generic module Code related to Marked Content (mc-chunks), generic mode Part of the tagpdf package

1 Marked content code – generic mode

```
1 <@@=tag>
2 <*generic>
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-mc-code-generic} {2025-06-27} {0.99s}
4 {part of tagpdf - code related to marking chunks - generic mode}
5 </generic>
6 <*debug>
7 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-debug-generic} {2025-06-27} {0.99s}
8 {part of tagpdf - debugging code related to marking chunks - generic mode}
9 </debug>
```

1.1 Variables

```
10 <*generic>
```

`\l__tag_mc_ref_abspage_tl` We need a ref-label system to ensure that the MCID cnt restarts at 0 on a new page This will be used to store the tagabspace attribute retrieved from a label.

```
11 \tl_new:N \l__tag_mc_ref_abspage_tl
```

(End of definition for `\l__tag_mc_ref_abspage_tl`.)

`\l__tag_mc_tmpa_tl` temporary variable

```
12 \tl_new:N \l__tag_mc_tmpa_tl
```

(End of definition for `\l__tag_mc_tmpa_tl`.)

`\g__tag_mc_marks` a marks register to keep track of the mc's at page breaks and a sequence to keep track of the data for the continuation extra-tmb. We probably will need to track mc-marks in more than one stream, so the seq contains the name of the stream.

```
13 \newmarks \g__tag_mc_marks
```

(End of definition for `\g__tag_mc_marks`.)

`\g__tag_mc_main_marks_seq` Each stream has an associated global seq variable holding the bottom marks from the/a
`\g__tag_mc_footnote_marks_seq` previous chunk in the stream. We provide three by default: main, footnote and multicol.
`\g__tag_mc_multicol_marks_seq` TODO: perhaps an interface for more streams will be needed.

```
14 \seq_new:N \g__tag_mc_main_marks_seq
```

```
15 \seq_new:N \g__tag_mc_footnote_marks_seq
```

```
16 \seq_new:N \g__tag_mc_multicol_marks_seq
```

(End of definition for `\g__tag_mc_main_marks_seq`, `\g__tag_mc_footnote_marks_seq`, and `\g__tag_mc_multicol_marks_seq`.)

`\tag_mc_new_stream:n`

```
17 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_mc_new_stream:n #1
18 {
19   \seq_new:c { g__tag_mc_multicol_#1_seq }
20 }
```

(End of definition for `\tag_mc_new_stream:n`. This function is documented on page 80.)

`\l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq`
`\l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq`

The marks content contains a number of data which we will have to access and compare, so we will store it locally in two sequences. `topmarks` is unusable in LaTeX so we ignore it.

```
21 \seq_new:N \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq
22 \seq_new:N \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq
```

(End of definition for `\l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq` and `\l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq`.)

1.2 Functions

`__tag_mc_begin_marks:nn`
`__tag_mc_artifact_begin_marks:n`
`__tag_mc_end_marks:`

Generic mode need to set marks for the page break and split stream handling. We always set two marks to be able to detect the case when no mark is on a page/galley. MC-begin commands will set (b,-,data) and (b+,data), MC-end commands will set (e,-,data) and (e+,data).

```
23 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_begin_marks:nn #1 #2 %#1 tag, #2 label
24 {
25   \tex_marks:D \g__tag_mc_marks
26   {
27     b-, %first of begin pair
28     \int_use:N\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int, %mc-num
29     \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl, %structure num
30     #1, %tag
31     \bool_if:NT \l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool{stash}, % stash info
32     #2, %label
33   }
34   \tex_marks:D \g__tag_mc_marks
35   {
36     b+, % second of begin pair
37     \int_use:N\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int, %mc-num
38     \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl, %structure num
39     #1, %tag
40     \bool_if:NT \l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool{stash}, % stash info
41     #2, %label
42   }
43 }
44 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_mc_begin_marks:nn {oo}
45 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_artifact_begin_marks:n #1 %#1 type
46 {
47   \tex_marks:D \g__tag_mc_marks
48   {
49     b-, %first of begin pair
50     \int_use:N\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int, %mc-num
51     -1, %structure num
52     #1 %type
53   }
```

```

54 \tex_marks:D \g__tag_mc_marks
55 {
56   b+, %first of begin pair
57   \int_use:N\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int, %mc-num
58   -1, %structure num
59   #1 %Type
60 }
61 }
62
63 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_end_marks:
64 {
65   \tex_marks:D \g__tag_mc_marks
66   {
67     e-, %first of end pair
68     \int_use:N\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int, %mc-num
69     \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl, %structure num
70   }
71   \tex_marks:D \g__tag_mc_marks
72   {
73     e+, %second of end pair
74     \int_use:N\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int, %mc-num
75     \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl, %structure num
76   }
77 }

```

(End of definition for `__tag_mc_begin_marks:nn`, `__tag_mc_artifact_begin_marks:n`, and `__tag_mc_end_marks:.`)

`__tag_mc_disable_marks:` This disables the marks. They can't be reenabled, so it should only be used in groups.

```

78 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_disable_marks:
79 {
80   \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_mc_begin_marks:nn \use_none:nn
81   \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_mc_artifact_begin_marks:n \use_none:n
82   \cs_set_eq:NN \__tag_mc_end_marks: \prg_do_nothing:
83 }

```

(End of definition for `__tag_mc_disable_marks:.`)

`__tag_mc_get_marks:` This stores the current content of the marks in the sequences. It naturally should only be used in places where it makes sense.

```

84 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_get_marks:
85 {
86   \exp_args:NNe
87   \seq_set_from_clist:Nn \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq
88   { \tex_firstmarks:D \g__tag_mc_marks }
89   \exp_args:NNe
90   \seq_set_from_clist:Nn \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq
91   { \tex_botmarks:D \g__tag_mc_marks }
92 }

```

(End of definition for `__tag_mc_get_marks:.`)

`__tag_mc_store:nnn` This inserts the mc-chunk `<mc-num>` into the structure `struct-num` after the `<mc-prev>`. The structure must already exist. The additional mcid dictionary is stored in a property.

The item is retrieved when the kid entry is built. We test if there is already an addition and append if needed.

```

93 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_store:nnn #1 #2 #3 % #1 mc-prev, #2 mc-num #3 structure-
    num
94 {
95   %\prop_show:N \g__tag_struct_cont_mc_prop
96   \prop_get:NnNTF \g__tag_struct_cont_mc_prop {#1} \l__tag_tmpa_tl
97   {
98     \prop_gput:Nne \g__tag_struct_cont_mc_prop {#1}{ \l__tag_tmpa_tl \__tag_struct_mcid_c
99   }
100  {
101    \prop_gput:Nne \g__tag_struct_cont_mc_prop {#1}{ \__tag_struct_mcid_dict:n {#2}}
102  }
103  \prop_gput:Nee \g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop
104    {#2}
105    {#3}
106  }
107 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_mc_store:nnn {eee}

```

(End of definition for __tag_mc_store:nnn.)

__tag_mc_insert_extra_tmb:n These two functions should be used in the output routine at the place where a mc-literal could be missing due to a page break or some other split. They check (with the help of the marks) if a extra-tmb or extra-tme is needed. The tmb command stores also the mc into the structure, the tme has to store the data for a following extra-tmb. The argument takes a stream name like main or footnote to allow different handling there. The content of the marks must be stored before (with \@_mc_get_marks: or manually) into \l_@_mc_firstmarks_seq and \l_@_mc_botmarks_seq so that the tests can use them.

```

108 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_insert_extra_tmb:n #1 % #1 stream: e.g. main or footnote
109 {
110   \__tag_check_typeout_v:n {=>~ first~ \seq_use:Nn \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq {,~}}
111   \__tag_check_typeout_v:n {=>~ bot~ \seq_use:Nn \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq {,~}}
112   \__tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing:TF
113   {
114     \__tag_check_typeout_v:n {=>~ TMB~ ~ missing~ --- inserted}
115     %test if artifact
116     \int_compare:nNnTF { \seq_item:cn { g__tag_mc_#1_marks_seq } {3} } = {-
117       1}
118     {
119       \tl_set:Ne \l__tag_tmpa_tl { \seq_item:cn { g__tag_mc_#1_marks_seq } {4} }
120       \__tag_mc_handle_artifact:N \l__tag_tmpa_tl
121     }
122     {
123       \exp_args:Ne
124       \__tag_mc_bdc_mcid:n
125       {
126         \seq_item:cn { g__tag_mc_#1_marks_seq } {4}
127       }
128       \str_if_eq:eeTF
129       {
130         \seq_item:cn { g__tag_mc_#1_marks_seq } {5}
131       }

```

```

131         {}
132     {
133         %store
134         \__tag_mc_store:eee
135         {
136             \seq_item:cn { g__tag_mc_#1_marks_seq } {2}
137         }
138         { \int_eval:n{\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int} }
139         {
140             \seq_item:cn { g__tag_mc_#1_marks_seq } {3}
141         }
142     }
143     {
144         %stashed -> warning!!
145     }
146 }
147 }
148 {
149     \__tag_check_typeout_v:n {=>~ TMB~ not~ missing}
150 }
151 }
152
153 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_insert_extra_tme:n #1 % #1 stream, eg. main or footnote
154 {
155     \__tag_check_if_mc_tme_missing:TF
156     {
157         \__tag_check_typeout_v:n {=>~ TME~ ~ missing~ --- inserted}
158         \__tag_mc_emc:
159         \seq_gset_eq:cN
160         { g__tag_mc_#1_marks_seq }
161         \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq
162     }
163     {
164         \__tag_check_typeout_v:n {=>~ TME~ not~ missing}
165     }
166 }

```

(End of definition for __tag_mc_insert_extra_tmb:n and __tag_mc_insert_extra_tme:n.)

1.3 Looking at MC marks in boxes

__tag_add_missing_mcs:Nn Assumptions:

- test for tagging active outside;
- mark retrieval also outside.

This takes a box register as its first argument (or the register number in a count register, as used by `multicol`). It adds an extra tmb at the top of the box if necessary and similarly an extra tme at the end. This is done by adding hboxes in a way that the positioning and the baseline of the given box is not altered. The result is written back to the box.

The second argument is the stream this box belongs to und is currently either `main` for the main galley, `footnote` for footnote note text, or `multicol` for boxes produced for columns in that environment. Other streams may follow over time.

```

167 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_add_missing_mcs:Nn #1 #2 {
168   \vbadness \@M
169   \vfuzz      \c_max_dim
170   \vbox_set_to_ht:Nnn #1 { \box_ht:N #1 } {
171     \hbox_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_box { \__tag_mc_insert_extra_tmb:n {#2} }
172     \hbox_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpb_box { \__tag_mc_insert_extra_tme:n {#2} }
173     \int_compare:nNnT { \l__tag_loglevel_int } > { 0 }
174       {
175         \seq_log:c { g__tag_mc_#2_marks_seq }
176       }

```

The box placed on the top gets zero size and thus will not affect the box dimensions of the box we are modifying.

```

177   \box_set_ht:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_box \c_zero_dim
178   \box_set_dp:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_box \c_zero_dim

```

The box added at the bottom will get the depth of the original box. This way we can arrange that from the outside everything looks as before.

```

179   \box_set_ht:Nn \l__tag_tmpb_box \c_zero_dim
180   \box_set_dp:Nn \l__tag_tmpb_box { \box_dp:N #1 }

```

We need to set `\boxmaxdepth` in case the original box has an unusually large depth, otherwise that depth is not preserved when we string things together.

```

181   \boxmaxdepth \@maxdepth
182   \box_use_drop:N      \l__tag_tmpa_box
183   \vbox_unpack_drop:N #1

```

Back up by the depth of the box as we add that later again.

```

184   \tex_kern:D -\box_dp:N \l__tag_tmpb_box

```

And we don't want any glue added when we add the box.

```

185   \nointerlineskip
186   \box_use_drop:N \l__tag_tmpb_box
187 }
188 }

```

(End of definition for `__tag_add_missing_mcs:Nn`.)

```

\tag_mc_add_missing_to_stream:Nn
\__tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn

```

This is the main command to add mc to the stream. It is therefore guarded by the mc-boolean.

If we aren't in the main stream then processing is a bit more complicated because to get at the marks in the box we need to artificially split it and then look at the split marks.

First argument is the box to update and the second is the "stream". In lua mode the command is a no-op.

```

189 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn #1#2
190 {
191   \__tag_check_if_active_mc:T {

```

First set up a temp box for trial splitting.

```

192   \vbadness\maxdimen
193   \box_set_eq:NN \l__tag_tmpa_box #1

```

Split the box to the largest size available. This should give us all content (but to be sure that there is no issue we could test out test box is empty now (not done).

```

194   \vbox_set_split_to_ht:NNn \l__tag_tmpa_box \l__tag_tmpa_box \c_max_dim

```

As a side effect of this split we should now have the first and bottom split marks set up. We use this to set up `\l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq`

```

195     \exp_args:NNe
196     \seq_set_from_clist:Nn \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq
197     { \tex_splitfirstmarks:D \g__tag_mc_marks }

```

Some debugging info:

```

198 %     \iow_term:n { First~ mark~ from~ this~ box: }
199 %     \seq_log:N \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq

```

If this mark was empty then clearly the bottom mark will too be empty. Thus in this case we make use of the saved bot mark from the previous chunk. Note that if this is the first chunk in the stream the global seq would contain a random value, but then we can't end in this branch because the basis assumption is that streams are properly marked up so the first chunk would always have a mark at the beginning!

```

200     \seq_if_empty:NTF \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq
201     {
202         \__tag_check_typeout_v:n
203         {
204             No~ marks~ so~ use~ saved~ bot~ mark:~
205             \seq_use:cn {g__tag_mc_#2_marks_seq} {,~} \iow_newline:
206         }
207         \seq_set_eq:Nc \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq {g__tag_mc_#2_marks_seq}

```

We also update the bot mark to the same value so that we can later apply `__tag_add_missing_mcs:Nn` with the data structures in place (see assumptions made there).

```

208         \seq_set_eq:NN \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq
209     }

```

If there was a first mark then there is also a bot mark (and it can't be the same as our marks always come in pairs). So if that branch is chosen we update `\l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq` from the bot mark.

```

210     {
211         \__tag_check_typeout_v:n
212         {
213             Pick~ up~ new~ bot~ mark!
214         }
215         \exp_args:NNe
216         \seq_set_from_clist:Nn \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq
217         { \tex_splitbotmarks:D \g__tag_mc_marks }
218     }

```

Finally we call `__tag_add_missing_mcs:Nn` to add any missing tmb/tme as needed,

```

219     \__tag_add_missing_mcs:Nn #1 {#2}
220 %%
221     \seq_gset_eq:cN {g__tag_mc_#2_marks_seq} \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq
222 %%
223 }
224 }
225 \cs_set_eq:NN \tag_mc_add_missing_to_stream:Nn \__tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn

```

(End of definition for `\tag_mc_add_missing_to_stream:Nn` and `__tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn`. This function is documented on page 80.)

`_tag_mc_if_in_p:` This is a test if a mc is open or not. It depends simply on a global boolean: mc-chunks are added linearly so nesting should not be relevant.

`_tag_mc_if_in:TF`
`\tag_mc_if_in_p:`
`\tag_mc_if_in:TF`

One exception are header and footer (perhaps they are more, but for now it doesn't seem so, so there are no dedicated code to handle this situation): When they are built and added to the page we could be both inside or outside a mc-chunk. But header and footer should ignore this and not push/pop or warn about nested mc. It is therefore important there to set and reset the boolean manually. See the tagpddocu-patches.sty for an example.

```
226 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \_tag_mc_if_in: {p,T,F,TF}
227 {
228   \bool_if:NTF \g__tag_in_mc_bool
229     { \prg_return_true: }
230     { \prg_return_false: }
231 }
232
233 \prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \tag_mc_if_in: \_tag_mc_if_in: {p,T,F,TF}
```

(End of definition for _tag_mc_if_in:TF and \tag_mc_if_in:TF. This function is documented on page 79.)

`_tag_mc_bmc:n`
`_tag_mc_emc:`
`_tag_mc_bdc:nn`

These are the low-level commands. There are now equal to the pdfmanagement commands generic mode, but we use an indirection in case luamode need something else. change 04.08.2018: the commands do not check the validity of the arguments or try to escape them, this should be done before using them. change 2023-08-18: we are delaying the writing to the shipout.

```
234 % #1 tag, #2 properties
235 \cs_set_eq:NN \_tag_mc_bmc:n \pdf_bmc:n
236 \cs_set_eq:NN \_tag_mc_emc: \pdf_emc:
237 \cs_set_eq:NN \_tag_mc_bdc:nn \pdf_bdc:nn
238 \cs_set_eq:NN \_tag_mc_bdc_shipout:ee \pdf_bdc_shipout:ee
```

(End of definition for _tag_mc_bmc:n, _tag_mc_emc:, and _tag_mc_bdc:nn.)

`_tag_mc_bdc_mcid:nn`
`_tag_mc_bdc_mcid:n`
`_tag_mc_handle_mcid:nn`
`_tag_mc_handle_mcid:oo`

This create a BDC mark with an /MCID key. Most of the work here is to get the current number value for the MCID: they must be numbered by page starting with 0 and then successively. The first argument is the tag, e.g. P or Span, the second is used to pass more properties. Starting with texlive 2023 this is much simpler and faster as we can use delay the numbering to the shipout. We also define a wrapper around the low-level command as luamode will need something different.

```
239 \hook_gput_code:nnn {shipout/before}{tagpdf}{\flag_clear:n { \_tag/mcid } }
240 \cs_set_protected:Npn \_tag_mc_bdc_mcid:nn #1 #2
241 {
242   \int_gincr:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int
243   \_tag_property_record:eo
244   {
245     mcid-\int_use:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int
246   }
247   { \c__tag_property_mc_clist }
248   \_tag_mc_bdc_shipout:ee
249   {#1}
250   {
251     /MCID~\flag_height:n { \_tag/mcid }
252     \flag_raise:n { \_tag/mcid }~ #2

```

```

253     }
254   }
255   \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_bdc_mcid:n #1
256   {
257     \__tag_mc_bdc_mcid:nn {#1} {}
258   }
259
260   \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_handle_mcid:nn #1 #2 %#1 tag, #2 properties
261   {
262     \__tag_mc_bdc_mcid:nn {#1} {#2}
263   }
264
265   \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_mc_handle_mcid:nn {oo}

```

(End of definition for __tag_mc_bdc_mcid:nn, __tag_mc_bdc_mcid:n, and __tag_mc_handle_mcid:nn.)

__tag_mc_handle_stash:n This is the handler which puts a mc into the the current structure. The argument is the number of the mc. Beside storing the mc into the structure, it also has to record the structure for the parent tree. The name is a bit confusing, it does *not* handle mc with the stash key TODO: why does luamode use it for begin + use, but generic mode only for begin?

```

266   \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_handle_stash:n #1 %1 mcidnum
267   {
268     \__tag_check_mc_used:n {#1}
269     \__tag_struct_kid_mc_gput_right:nn
270     { \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl }
271     {#1}
272     \prop_gput:Nee \g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop
273     {#1}
274     { \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl }
275   }
276   \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_mc_handle_stash:n { e }

```

(End of definition for __tag_mc_handle_stash:n.)

__tag_mc_bmc_artifact: Two commands to create artifacts, one without type, and one with. We define also a wrapper handler as luamode will need a different definition. TODO: perhaps later: more properties for artifacts

```

\__tag_mc_bmc_artifact:n
\__tag_mc_handle_artifact:N
277   \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_bmc_artifact:
278   {
279     \__tag_mc_bmc:n {Artifact}
280   }
281   \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_bmc_artifact:n #1
282   {
283     \__tag_mc_bdc:nn {Artifact}{/Type/#1}
284   }
285   \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_handle_artifact:N #1
286   % #1 is a var containing the artifact type
287   {
288     \int_gincr:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int
289     \tl_if_empty:NTF #1
290     { \__tag_mc_bmc_artifact: }
291     { \exp_args:No\__tag_mc_bmc_artifact:n {#1} }
292   }

```


(End of definition for `__tag_mc_bmc_artifact:`, `__tag_mc_bmc_artifact:n`, and `__tag_mc_handle_artifact:N`.)

`__tag_get_data_mc_tag:` This allows to retrieve the active mc-tag. It is use by the get command.

```
293 \cs_new:Nn __tag_get_data_mc_tag: { \g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl }
294 </generic>
```

(End of definition for `__tag_get_data_mc_tag:.`)

`\tag_mc_begin:n` These are the core public commands to open and close an mc. They don't need to be in the same group or grouping level, but the code expect that they are issued linearly. `\tag_mc_end:` The tag and the state is passed to the end command through a global var and a global boolean.

```
295 <(base)\cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_mc_begin:n #1 { __tag_whatsits: \int_gincr:N \c@g__tag_MCID
296 <(base)\cs_new_protected:Nn \tag_mc_end:{ __tag_whatsits: }
297 <*generic | debug>
298 <*generic>
299 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_mc_begin:n #1 %#1 keyval
300 {
301   __tag_check_if_active_mc:T
302   {
303 </generic>
304 <*debug>
305 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_mc_begin:n #1 %#1 keyval
306 {
307   __tag_check_if_active_mc:TF
308   {
309     __tag_debug_mc_begin_insert:n { #1 }
310 </debug>
311   \group_begin: %hm
312     __tag_check_mc_if_nested:
313     \bool_gset_true:N \g__tag_in_mc_bool
```

set default MC tags to structure:

```
314   \tl_set_eq:NN \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
315   \tl_gset_eq:NN\g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
316   \tl_if_empty:NTF\l__tag_mc_lang_tl
317   {
318     \keys_set:nn { __tag / mc }{ #1 }
319   }
320   {
321     \keys_set:nn { __tag / mc }{ lang=\l__tag_mc_lang_tl, #1 }
322   }
323   \bool_if:NTF \l__tag_mc_artifact_bool
324   { %handle artifact
325     __tag_mc_handle_artifact:N \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl
326     \exp_args:No
327     __tag_mc_artifact_begin_marks:n { \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl }
328   }
329   { %handle mcid type
330     __tag_check_mc_tag:N \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl
331     __tag_mc_handle_mcid:oo
332     { \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl }
333     { \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl }
```

```

334     \__tag_mc_begin_marks:oo{\l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl}{\l__tag_mc_key_label_tl}
335     \tl_if_empty:NF {\l__tag_mc_key_label_tl}
336     {
337         \__tag_mc_handle_mc_label:e { \l__tag_mc_key_label_tl }
338     }

```

check if the MC can be used here. This is guarded by the stash boolean.

```

339     \bool_if:NF \l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool
340     {
341         \socket_use:nn{tag/check/parent-child}
342         {
343             \__tag_mc_check_parent_child:o
344             { \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl }
345         }
346         \__tag_mc_handle_stash:e { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int }
347     }
348 }
349 }
350 \group_end:
351 }
352 <*debug>
353 {
354     \__tag_debug_mc_begin_ignore:n { #1 }
355 }
356 </debug>
357 }
358 <*generic>
359 \cs_set_protected:Nn \tag_mc_end:
360 {
361     \__tag_check_if_active_mc:T
362     {
363 </generic>
364 <*debug>
365 \cs_set_protected:Nn \tag_mc_end:
366 {
367     \__tag_check_if_active_mc:TF
368     {
369         \__tag_debug_mc_end_insert:
370 </debug>
371         \__tag_check_mc_if_open:
372         \bool_gset_false:N \g__tag_in_mc_bool
373         \tl_gset:Nn \g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl { }
374         \__tag_mc_emc:
375         \__tag_mc_end_marks:
376     }
377 <*debug>
378     {
379         \__tag_debug_mc_end_ignore:
380     }
381 </debug>
382 }
383 </generic | debug>

```

(End of definition for \tag_mc_begin:n and \tag_mc_end:. These functions are documented on page 79.)

1.4 Keys

Definitions are different in luamode. `tag` and `raw` are expanded as `\lua_now:e` in lua does it too and we assume that their values are safe.

```

tag (mc-key)
raw (mc-key)
alt (mc-key)
actualtext (mc-key)
label (mc-key)
artifact (mc-key)
384 <*generic>
385 \keys_define:nn { __tag / mc }
386 {
387   tag .code:n = % the name (H,P,Span) etc
388   {
389     \tl_set:Ne \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl { #1 }
390     \tl_gset:Ne \g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl { #1 }
391   },
392   raw .code:n =
393   {
394     \tl_put_right:Nn \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { #1 }
395   },
396   alt .code:n = % Alt property
397   {
398     \str_set_convert:Noon
399     \l__tag_tmpa_str
400     { #1 }
401     { default }
402     { utf16/hex }
403     \tl_put_right:Nn \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { /Alt~< }
404     \tl_put_right:No \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { \l__tag_tmpa_str>~ }
405   },
406   alttext .meta:n = {alt=#1},

```

`lang` is not according to the spec, but it works in acrobat We assume that this are simple strings that do not need escaping.

```

407   lang .code:n = % Lang property
408   {
409     \tl_put_right:Nn \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { /Lang~(#1) }
410   },
411   actualtext .code:n = % ActualText property
412   {
413     \tl_if_empty:oF{#1}
414     {
415       \str_set_convert:Noon
416       \l__tag_tmpa_str
417       { #1 }
418       { default }
419       { utf16/hex }
420       \tl_put_right:Nn \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { /ActualText~< }
421       \tl_put_right:No \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { \l__tag_tmpa_str>~ }
422     }
423   },
424   label .tl_set:N = \l__tag_mc_key_label_tl,
425   artifact .code:n =
426   {
427     \exp_args:Nne
428     \keys_set:nn
429     { __tag / mc }

```

```
430         { __artifact-bool, __artifact-type=#1 }
431     },
432     artifact .default:n    = {notype}
433 }
434 </generic>
```

(End of definition for tag (mc-key) and others. These functions are documented on page 80.)

Part VII

The `tagpdf-mc-luacode` module Code related to Marked Content (mc-chunks), luamode-specific Part of the `tagpdf` package

The code is split into three parts: code shared by all engines, code specific to luamode and code not used by luamode.

1 Marked content code – luamode code

luamode uses attributes to mark mc-chunks. The two attributes used are defined in the backend file. The backend also load the lua file, as it can contain functions needed elsewhere. The attributes for mc are global (between 0.6 and 0.81 they were local but this was reverted). The attributes are setup only in lua, and one should use the lua functions to set and get them.

`g_@@_mc_type_attr`: the value represent the type

`g_@@_mc_cnt_attr`: will hold the `\c@g_@@_MCID_abs_int` value

Handling attribute needs a different system to number the page wise mcid's: a `\tagmcbegin ... \tagmcbend` pair no longer surrounds exactly one mc chunk: it can be split at page breaks. We know the included mcid(s) only after the ship out. So for the `struct -> mcid` mapping we need to record `struct -> mc-cnt` (in `\g_@@_mc_parenttree_prop` and/or a lua table and at shipout `mc-cnt-> {mcid, mcid, ...}` and when building the trees connect both.

Key definitions are overwritten for luatex to store that data in lua-tables. The data for the mc are in `ltx.@@.mc[absnum]`. The fields of the table are:

`tag` : the type (a string)

`raw` : more properties (string)

`label`: a string.

`artifact`: the presence indicates an artifact, the value (string) is the type.

`kids`: a array of tables

`{1={kid=num2,page=pagenum1}, 2={kid=num2,page=pagenum2},...}`,

this describes the chunks the mc has been split to by the traversing code

`parent`: the number of the structure it is in. Needed to build the parent tree.

```
1 <@@=tag>
2 <*luamode>
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-mc-code-lua} {2025-06-27} {0.99s}
4   {tagpdf - mc code only for the luamode }
5 </luamode>
6 <*debug>
7 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-debug-lua} {2025-06-27} {0.99s}
8   {part of tagpdf - debugging code related to marking chunks - lua mode}
9 </debug>
```

The main function which wanders through the shipout box to inject the literals. if the new callback is there, it is used.

```

10 <*luamode>
11 \hook_gput_code:nnn{begindocument}{tagpdf/mc}
12 {
13   \bool_if:NT\g__tag_active_space_bool
14   {
15     \lua_now:e
16     {
17       if~luatexbase.callbacktypes.pre_shipout_filter~then~
18         luatexbase.add_to_callback("pre_shipout_filter", function(TAGBOX)~
19           ltx.__tag.func.space_chars_shipout(TAGBOX)~return~true~
20         end, "tagpdf")~
21       if~luatexbase.declare_callback_rule~then~
22         luatexbase.declare_callback_rule("pre_shipout_filter", "luaotfload.dvi", "aft
23       end~
24     end
25   }
26   \lua_now:e
27   {
28     if~luatexbase.callbacktypes.pre_shipout_filter~then~
29       token.get_next()~
30     end
31   } \@secondoftwo \@gobble
32   {
33     \hook_gput_code:nnn{shipout/before}{tagpdf/lua}
34     {
35       \lua_now:e
36       { ltx.__tag.func.space_chars_shipout (tex.box["ShipoutBox"]) }
37     }
38   }
39 }
40 \bool_if:NT\g__tag_active_mc_bool
41 {
42   \lua_now:e
43   {
44     if~luatexbase.callbacktypes.pre_shipout_filter~then~
45       luatexbase.add_to_callback("pre_shipout_filter", function(TAGBOX)~
46         ltx.__tag.func.mark_shipout(TAGBOX)~return~true~
47       end, "tagpdf")~
48     end
49   }
50   \lua_now:e
51   {
52     if~luatexbase.callbacktypes.pre_shipout_filter~then~
53       token.get_next()~
54     end
55   } \@secondoftwo \@gobble
56   {
57     \hook_gput_code:nnn{shipout/before}{tagpdf/lua}
58     {
59       \lua_now:e
60       { ltx.__tag.func.mark_shipout (tex.box["ShipoutBox"]) }
61     }

```

```

62         }
63     }
64 }

```

1.1 Commands

`_tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn` This command is used in the output routine by the ptagging code. It should do nothing in luamode.

```

65 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn #1#2 {}
66 \cs_set_eq:NN \tag_mc_add_missing_to_stream:Nn \_tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn

```

(End of definition for `_tag_add_missing_mcs_to_stream:Nn`.)

`\tag_mc_new_stream:n`

```

67 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_mc_new_stream:n #1 {}

```

(End of definition for `\tag_mc_new_stream:n`. This function is documented on page 80.)

`_tag_mc_if_in_p:` This tests, if we are in an mc, for attributes this means to check against a number.

```

\_tag_mc_if_in:TF
\tag_mc_if_in_p:
\tag_mc_if_in:TF
68 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \_tag_mc_if_in: {p,T,F,TF}
69 {
70     \int_compare:nNnTF
71         { -2147483647 }
72         =
73         {\lua_now:e
74             {
75                 tex.print(\int_use:N \c_document_cctab,tex.getattribute(luatexbase.attributes.g__t
76             )
77         }
78         { \prg_return_false: }
79         { \prg_return_true: }
80     }
81
82 \prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn \tag_mc_if_in: \_tag_mc_if_in: {p,T,F,TF}

```

(End of definition for `_tag_mc_if_in:TF` and `\tag_mc_if_in:TF`. This function is documented on page 79.)

`_tag_mc_lua_set_mc_type_attr:n` This takes a tag name, and sets the attributes globally to the related number.

```

\_tag_mc_lua_set_mc_type_attr:o
\_tag_mc_lua_unset_mc_type_attr:
83 \cs_new:Nn \_tag_mc_lua_set_mc_type_attr:n % #1 is a tag name
84 {
85     %TODO ltx.__tag.func.get_num_from("#1") seems not to return a suitable number??
86     \tl_set:Ne\l__tag_tmpa_tl{\lua_now:e{ltx.__tag.func.output_num_from ("#1")} }
87     \lua_now:e
88     {
89         tex.setattribute
90         (
91             "global",
92             luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_type_attr,
93             \l__tag_tmpa_tl
94         )
95     }
96     \lua_now:e
97     {

```

```

98         tex.setattribute
99         (
100            "global",
101            luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_cnt_attr,
102            \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:
103        )
104    }
105 }
106
107 \cs_generate_variant:Nn\__tag_mc_lua_set_mc_type_attr:n { o }
108
109 \cs_new:Nn \__tag_mc_lua_unset_mc_type_attr:
110 {
111     \lua_now:e
112     {
113         tex.setattribute
114         (
115             "global",
116             luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_type_attr,
117             -2147483647
118         )
119     }
120     \lua_now:e
121     {
122         tex.setattribute
123         (
124             "global",
125             luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_cnt_attr,
126             -2147483647
127         )
128     }
129 }
130

```

(End of definition for __tag_mc_lua_set_mc_type_attr:n and __tag_mc_lua_unset_mc_type_attr:.)

__tag_mc_insert_mcid_kids:n These commands will in the finish code replace the dummy for a mc by the real mcid
 __tag_mc_insert_mcid_single_kids:n kids we need a variant for the case that it is the only kid, to get the array right

```

131 \cs_new:Nn \__tag_mc_insert_mcid_kids:n
132 {
133     \lua_now:e { ltx.__tag.func.mc_insert_kids (#1,0) }
134 }
135
136 \cs_new:Nn \__tag_mc_insert_mcid_single_kids:n
137 {
138     \lua_now:e {ltx.__tag.func.mc_insert_kids (#1,1) }
139 }

```

(End of definition for __tag_mc_insert_mcid_kids:n and __tag_mc_insert_mcid_single_kids:n.)

__tag_mc_handle_stash:n This is the lua variant for the command to put an mcid absolute number in the current
 __tag_mc_handle_stash:e structure.

```

140 </luamode>
141 <*luamode | debug>

```



```

142 <luamode>\cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_handle_stash:n #1 %1 mcidnum
143 <debug>\cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_mc_handle_stash:n #1 %1 mcidnum
144 {
145   \__tag_check_mc_used:n { #1 }
146   \seq_gput_right:cn % Don't fill a lua table due to the command in the item,
147                       % so use the kernel command
148   { g__tag_struct_kids_\g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl _seq }
149   {
150     \__tag_mc_insert_mcid_kids:n {#1}%
151   }
152 <debug>   \seq_gput_right:cn % Don't fill a lua table due to the command in the item,
153 <debug>                       % so use the kernel command
154 <debug>   { g__tag_struct_debug_kids_\g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl _seq }
155 <debug>   {
156     MC~#1%
157   }
158   \lua_now:e
159   {
160     ltx.__tag.func.store_struct_mcab
161     (
162       \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl,#1
163     )
164   }
165 }
166 </luamode | debug>
167 <*luamode>
168 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_mc_handle_stash:n { e }

```

(End of definition for __tag_mc_handle_stash:n.)

\tag_mc_begin:n This is the lua version of the user command. We currently don't check if there is nesting as it doesn't matter so much in lua.

```

169 \cs_set_protected:Nn \tag_mc_begin:n
170 {
171   \__tag_check_if_active_mc:T
172   {
173     \group_begin:
174     %\__tag_check_mc_if_nested:
175     \bool_gset_true:N \g__tag_in_mc_bool
176     \bool_set_false:N\l__tag_mc_artifact_bool
177     \tl_clear:N \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl
178     \int_gincr:N \c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int

```

set the default tag to the structure:

```

179     \tl_set_eq:NN \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
180     \tl_gset_eq:NN\g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
181     \lua_now:e
182     {
183       ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data(\__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:,"tag","\g__tag_struct_tag_tl
184     }

```

2025-05-23 allow lang on the MC (not really spec conform, but does work in acrobat).

```

185     \tl_if_empty:NTF\l__tag_mc_lang_tl
186     {
187       \keys_set:nn { __tag / mc }{ label={}, #1 }

```

```

188     }
189     {
190     \keys_set:nn { __tag / mc }{ label={},lang=\l__tag_mc_lang_tl, #1 }
191     }
192     %check that a tag or artifact has been used
193     \__tag_check_mc_tag:N \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl
194     %set the attributes:
195     \__tag_mc_lua_set_mc_type_attr:o { \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl }
196     \bool_if:NF \l__tag_mc_artifact_bool
197     { % store the absolute num name in a label:
198     \tl_if_empty:NF {\l__tag_mc_key_label_tl}
199     {
200     \__tag_mc_handle_mc_label:e { \l__tag_mc_key_label_tl }
201     }
202     % if not stashed record the absolute number
203     \bool_if:NF \l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool
204     {
205     \socket_use:nn{tag/check/parent-child}
206     {
207     \__tag_mc_check_parent_child:o
208     { \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl }
209     }
210     \__tag_mc_handle_stash:e { \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt: }
211     }
212     }
213     \group_end:
214 }
215 }

```

(End of definition for `\tag_mc_begin:n`. This function is documented on page 79.)

`\tag_mc_end:` TODO: check how the use command must be guarded.

```

216 \cs_set_protected:Nn \tag_mc_end:
217 {
218   \__tag_check_if_active_mc:T
219   {
220     %\__tag_check_mc_if_open:
221     \bool_gset_false:N \g__tag_in_mc_bool
222     \bool_set_false:N\l__tag_mc_artifact_bool
223     \__tag_mc_lua_unset_mc_type_attr:
224     \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl { }
225     \tl_gset:Nn \g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl { }
226   }
227 }

```

(End of definition for `\tag_mc_end:`. This function is documented on page 79.)

`\tag_mc_reset_box:N` This allows to reset the mc-attributes in box. On base and generic mode it should do nothing.

```

228 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_mc_reset_box:N #1
229 {
230   \lua_now:e
231   {
232     local~type=teX.getattribute(luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_type_attr)

```

```

233     local~mc=tex.getattribute( luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_mc_cnt_attr)
234     ltx.__tag.func.update_mc_attributes(tex.getbox(\int_use:N #1),mc,type)
235   }
236 }

```

(End of definition for \tag_mc_reset_box:N. This function is documented on page 79.)

__tag_get_data_mc_tag: The command to retrieve the current mc tag. TODO: Perhaps this should use the attribute instead.

```

237 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_get_data_mc_tag: { \g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl }

```

(End of definition for __tag_get_data_mc_tag:.)

1.2 Key definitions

```

tag (mc-key)   TODO: check conversion, check if local/global setting is right.
raw (mc-key)   238 \keys_define:nn { __tag / mc }
alt (mc-key)   239 {
lang (mc-key=  240   tag .code:n = %
actualtext (mc-key) 241   {
label (mc-key)   242     \tl_set:Ne \l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl { #1 }
artifact (mc-key) 243     \tl_gset:Ne \g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl { #1 }
                244     \lua_now:e
                245     {
                246       ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data(\__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:,"tag", "#1")
                247     }
                248   },
                249   raw .code:n =
                250   {
                251     \tl_put_right:Ne \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { #1 }
                252     \lua_now:e
                253     {
                254       ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data(\__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:,"raw", "#1")
                255     }
                256   },
                257   alt .code:n      = % Alt property
                258   {
                259     \tl_if_empty:oF{#1}
                260     {
                261       \str_set_convert:Noon
                262         \l__tag_tmpa_str
                263         { #1 }
                264         { default }
                265         { utf16/hex }
                266       \tl_put_right:Nn \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { /Alt~< }
                267       \tl_put_right:No \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { \l__tag_tmpa_str>~ }
                268       \lua_now:e
                269       {
                270         ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data
                271         (
                272           \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:,"alt","/Alt~<\str_use:N \l__tag_tmpa_str>"
                273         )
                274       }
                275     }

```

```

276     },
277 lang .code:n      = % Lang property
278     {
279     \tl_if_empty:oF{#1}
280     {
281     \tl_put_right:Ne \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { /Lang~{#1} }
282     \lua_now:e
283     {
284     ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data
285     (
286     \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:,"lang","/Lang~{#1}"
287     )
288     }
289     }
290     },
291 alttext .meta:n = {alt=#1},
292 actualtext .code:n      = % Alt property
293     {
294     \tl_if_empty:oF{#1}
295     {
296     \str_set_convert:Noon
297     \l__tag_tmpa_str
298     { #1 }
299     { default }
300     { utf16/hex }
301     \tl_put_right:Nn \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { /Alt~< }
302     \tl_put_right:No \l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl { \l__tag_tmpa_str>~ }
303     \lua_now:e
304     {
305     ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data
306     (
307     \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:,
308     "actualtext",
309     "/ActualText~<\str_use:N \l__tag_tmpa_str>"
310     )
311     }
312     }
313     },
314 label .code:n =
315     {
316     \tl_set:Nn\l__tag_mc_key_label_tl { #1 }
317     \lua_now:e
318     {
319     ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data
320     (
321     \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:,"label","#1"
322     )
323     }
324     },
325 __artifact-store .code:n =
326     {
327     \lua_now:e
328     {
329     ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data

```

```

330         (
331         \__tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:,"artifact","#1"
332         )
333     }
334 },
335 artifact .code:n      =
336     {
337     \exp_args:Nne
338     \keys_set:nn
339     { __tag / mc }
340     { __artifact-bool, __artifact-type=#1, tag=Artifact }
341     \exp_args:Nne
342     \keys_set:nn
343     { __tag / mc }
344     { __artifact-store=\l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl }
345     },
346 artifact .default:n   = { notype }
347 }
348
349 \luamode)

```

(End of definition for tag (mc-key) and others. These functions are documented on page 80.)

Part VIII

The tagpdf-struct module

Commands to create the structure Part of the tagpdf package

1 Public Commands

<code>\tag_struct_begin:n</code>	<code>\tag_struct_begin:n {<key-values>}</code>
<code>\tag_struct_end:</code>	<code>\tag_struct_end:</code>
<code>\tag_struct_end:n</code>	<code>\tag_struct_end:n {<tag>}</code>

These commands start and end a new structure. They don't start a group. They set all their values globally. `\tag_struct_end:n` does nothing special normally (apart from swallowing its argument, but if `tagpdf-debug` is loaded, it will check if the `{<tag>}` (after expansion) is identical to the current structure on the stack. The tag is not role mapped!

<code>\tag_struct_use:n</code>	<code>\tag_struct_use:n {<label>}</code>
<code>\tag_struct_use_num:n</code>	<code>\tag_struct_use_num:n {<structure number>}</code>

These commands insert a structure previously stashed away as kid into the currently active structure. A structure should be used only once, if the structure already has a parent a warning is issued.

<code>\tag_struct_object_ref:n</code>	<code>\tag_struct_object_ref:n {<structure number>}</code>
<code>\tag_struct_object_ref:e</code>	

This is a small wrapper around `\pdf_object_ref:n` to retrieve the object reference of the structure with the number `<struct number>`. This number can be retrieved and stored for the current structure for example with `\tag_get:n{<structnum>}`. Be aware that it can only be used if the structure has already been created and that it doesn't check if the object actually exists!

The following two functions are used to add annotations. They must be used together and with care to get the same numbers. Perhaps some improvements are needed here.

<code>\tag_struct_insert_annot:nn</code>	<code>\tag_struct_insert_annot:nn {<object reference>} {<struct parent number>}</code>
--	--

This inserts an annotation in the structure. `<object reference>` is there reference to the annotation. `<struct parent number>` should be the same number as had been inserted with `\tag_struct_parent_int:` as `StructParent` value to the dictionary of the annotation. The command will increase the value of the counter used by `\tag_struct_parent_int:.`

<code>\tag_struct_parent_int:</code>	<code>\tag_struct_parent_int:</code>
--------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

This gives back the next free `/StructParent` number (assuming that it is together with `\tag_struct_insert_annot:nn` which will increase the number.

`\tag_struct_gput:nnn` `\tag_struct_gput:nnn` `{<structure number>}` `{<keyword>}` `{<value>}`

This is a command that allows to update the data of a structure. This often can't be done simply by replacing the value, as we have to preserve and extend existing content. We use therefore dedicated functions adjusted to the key in question. The first argument is the number of the structure, the second a keyword referring to a function, the third the value. Currently the only keyword is `ref` which updates the Ref key (an array)

`\tag_struct_gput_ref:nnn` `\tag_struct_gput_ref:nnn` `{<structure number>}` `{<keyword>}` `{<value>}`

This is an user interface to add a Ref key to an existing structure. The target structure doesn't have to exist yet but can be addressed by label, destname or even num. `<keyword>` is currently either `label`, `dest` or `num`. The value is then either a label name, the name of a destination or a structure number.

2 Public keys

2.1 Keys for the structure commands

`tag` (*struct key*) This is required. The value of the key is normally one of the standard types listed in the main tagpdf documentation. It is possible to setup new tags/types. The value can also be of the form `type/NS`, where NS is the shorthand of a declared name space. Currently the names spaces `pdf`, `pdf2`, `mathml` and `user` are defined. This allows to use a different name space than the one connected by default to the tag. But normally this should not be needed.

`stash` (*struct key*) Normally a new structure inserts itself as a kid into the currently active structure. This key prohibits this. The structure is nevertheless from now on “the current active structure” and parent for following marked content and structures.

`label` (*struct key*) This key sets a label by which one can refer to the structure. It is e.g. used by `\tag_struct_use:n` (where a real label is actually not needed as you can only use structures already defined), and by the `ref` key (which can refer to future structures). Internally the label name will start with `tagpdfstruct-` and it stores the two attributes `tagstruct` (the structure number) and `tagstructobj` (the object reference).

`parent` (*struct key*) By default a structure is added as kid to the currently active structure. With the parent key one can choose another parent. The value is a structure number which must refer to an already existing, previously created structure. Such a structure number can for example be have been stored with `\tag_get:n`, but one can also use a label on the parent structure and then use `\property_ref:nn{tagpdfstruct-label}{tagstruct}` to retrieve it.

`firstkid` (*struct key*) If this key is used the structure is added at the left of the kids of the parent structure (if the structure is not stashed). This means that it will be the first kid of the structure (unless some later structure uses the key too).

`title` (*struct key*) This keys allows to set the dictionary entry `/Title` in the structure object. The value is handled as verbatim string and hex encoded. Commands are not expanded. `title-o` will expand the value once.

- alt** (*struct key*) This key inserts an `/Alt` value in the dictionary of structure object. The value is handled as verbatim string and hex encoded. The value will be expanded first once. If it is empty, nothing will happen.
- actualtext** (*struct key*) This key inserts an `/ActualText` value in the dictionary of structure object. The value is handled as verbatim string and hex encoded. The value will be expanded first once. If it is empty, nothing will happen.
- lang** (*struct key*) This key allows to set the language for a structure element. The value should be a bcp-identifier, e.g. `de-De`.
- ref** (*struct key*) This key allows to add references to other structure elements, it adds the `/Ref` array to the structure. The value should be a comma separated list of structure labels set with the `label` key. e.g. `ref={label1,label2}`.
- E** (*struct key*) This key sets the `/E` key, the expanded form of an abbreviation or an acronym (I couldn't think of a better name, so I stucked to E).
- AF** (*struct key*) These keys handle associated files in the structure element.
- AFref** (*struct key*)
- AFinline** (*struct key*) `AF = <object name>`
- AFinline-o** (*struct key*) `AFref = <object reference>`
- texsource** (*struct key*) `AF-inline = <text content>`
- mathml** (*struct key*)
- The value `<object name>` should be the name of an object pointing to the `/Filespec` dictionary as expected by `\pdf_object_ref:n` from a current `l3kernel`.
- The value `AF-inline` is some text, which is embedded in the PDF as a text file with mime type `text/plain`. `AF-inline-o` is like `AF-inline` but expands the value once.
- Future versions will perhaps extend this to more mime types, but it is still a research task to find out what is really needed.
- `texsource` is a special variant of `AF-inline-o` which embeds the content as `.tex` source with the `/AFrelationship` key set to `/Source`. It also sets the `/Desc` key to a (currently) fix text.
- `mathml` is a special variant of `AF-inline-o` which embeds the content as `.xml` file with the `/AFrelationship` key set to `/Supplement`. It also sets the `/Desc` key to a (currently) fix text.
- The argument of `AF` is an object name referring an embedded file as declared for example with `\pdf_object_new:n` or with the `l3pdffile` module. `AF` expands its argument (this allows e.g. to use some variable for automatic numbering) and can be used more than once, to associate more than one file.
- The argument of `AFref` is an object reference to an embedded file or a variable expanding to such a object reference in the format as you would get e.g. from `\pdf_object_ref_last:` or `\pdf_object_ref:n` (and which is different for the various engines!). The key allows to make use of anonymous objects. Like `AF` the `AFref` key expands its argument and can be used more than once, to associate more than one file. *It does not check if the reference is valid!*
- The inline keys can be used only once per structure. Additional calls are ignored.
- attribute** (*struct key*) This key takes as argument a comma list of attribute names (use braces to protect the commas from the external key-val parser) and allows to add one or more attribute dictionary entries in the structure object. As an example


```
\tagstructbegin{tag=TH,attribute= TH-row}
```

Attribute names and their content must be declared first in `\tagpdfsetup`.

attribute-class (*struct key*) This key takes as argument a comma list of attribute class names (use braces to protect the commas from the external key-val parser) and allows to add one or more attribute classes to the structure object.

Attribute class names and their content must be declared first in `\tagpdfsetup`.

2.2 Setup keys

```
role/new-attribute (setup-key) role/new-attribute = {<name>}{<Content>}
```

```
newattribute (deprecated)
```

This key can be used in the setup command `\tagpdfsetup` and allow to declare a new attribute, which can be used as attribute or attribute class. The value are two brace groups, the first contains the name, the second the content.

```
\tagpdfsetup
{
  role/new-attribute =
    {TH-col}{/O /Table /Scope /Column},
  role/new-attribute =
    {TH-row}{/O /Table /Scope /Row},
}
```

root-AF (*setup key*) `root-AF = <object name>`

This key can be used in the setup command `\tagpdfsetup` and allows to add associated files to the root structure. Like AF it can be used more than once to add more than one file.

```
1 <@@=tag>
2 <*header>
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-struct-code} {2025-06-27} {0.99s}
4 {part of tagpdf - code related to storing structure}
5 </header>
```

3 Variables

`\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int` Every structure will have a unique, absolute number.

```
6 <base>\int_new:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int
7 <base>\int_gset:Nn \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int { 1 }
```

(End of definition for `\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int`.)

`\g__tag_struct_objR_seq` a sequence to store mapping between the structure number and the object number. We assume that structure numbers are assign consecutively and so the index of the seq can be used. A seq allows easy mapping over the structures.

```
8 <*package>
9 \__tag_seq_new:N \g__tag_struct_objR_seq
```

(End of definition for `\g__tag_struct_objR_seq`.)

`\c__tag_struct_null_tl` In lua mode we have to test if the kids a null
`10 \tl_const:Nn\c__tag_struct_null_tl {null}`

(End of definition for `\c__tag_struct_null_tl`.)

`\g__tag_struct_cont_mc_prop` in generic mode it can happen after a page break that we have to inject into a structure sequence an additional mc after. We will store this additional info in a property. The key is the absolute mc num, the value the pdf directory.

`11 __tag_prop_new:N \g__tag_struct_cont_mc_prop`

(End of definition for `\g__tag_struct_cont_mc_prop`.)

`\g__tag_struct_stack_seq` A stack sequence for the structure stack. When a sequence is opened it's number is put on the stack.

`12 \seq_new:N \g__tag_struct_stack_seq`
`13 \seq_gpush:Nn \g__tag_struct_stack_seq {1}`

(End of definition for `\g__tag_struct_stack_seq`.)

`\g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq` We will perhaps also need the tags. While it is possible to get them from the numbered stack, lets build a tag stack too.

`14 \seq_new:N \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq`
`15 \seq_gpush:Nn \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq {{Root}{StructTreeRoot}}`

(End of definition for `\g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq`.)

`\g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl` The global variable will hold the current structure number. It is already defined in `tagpdf-base`. The local temporary variable will hold the parent when we fetch it from the stack.
`\l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl`

`16 \</package>`
`17 \<base>\tl_new:N \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl`
`18 \<base>\tl_gset:Nn \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl {\int_use:N\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}`
`19 \<*package>`
`20 \tl_new:N \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl`

(End of definition for `\g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl` and `\l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl`.)

In luatex we will store the structure number as attribute.

`21 \sys_if_engine_luatex:TF`
`22 {`
`23 \cs_new:Npn __tag_struct_set_attribute:`
`24 {`
`25 \lua_now:e`
`26 {`
`27 tex.setattribute`
`28 (`
`29 "global",`
`30 luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_structnum_attr,`
`31 \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl`
`32)`
`33 }`
`34 }`
`35 }`

```

36 {
37   \cs_new_eq:NN \__tag_struct_set_attribute: \prg_do_nothing:
38 }

```

I will need at least one structure: the StructTreeRoot normally it should have only one kid, e.g. the document element.

The data of the StructTreeRoot and the StructElem are in properties: \g_@@_struct_1_prop for the root and \g_@@_struct_N_prop, $N \geq 2$ for the other.

This creates quite a number of properties, so perhaps we will have to do this more efficiently in the future.

All properties have at least the keys

Type StructTreeRoot or StructElem

and the keys from the two following lists (the root has a special set of properties). the values of the prop should be already escaped properly when the entries are created (title,lange,alt,E,actualtext)

These seq contain the keys we support in the two object types. They are currently no longer used, but are provided as documentation and for potential future checks. They should be adapted if there are changes in the PDF format.

```

39 \seq_const_from_clist:Nn \c__tag_struct_StructTreeRoot_entries_seq
40   {%p. 857/858
41     Type,           % always /StructTreeRoot
42     K,             % kid, dictionary or array of dictionaries
43     IDTree,        % currently unused
44     ParentTree,    % required,obj ref to the parent tree
45     ParentTreeNextKey, % optional
46     RoleMap,
47     ClassMap,
48     Namespaces,
49     AF             %pdf 2.0
50   }
51

```

```

52 \seq_const_from_clist:Nn \c__tag_struct_StructElem_entries_seq
53   {%p 858 f
54     Type,           %always /StructElem
55     S,             %tag/type
56     P,             %parent
57     ID,            %optional
58     Ref,           %optional, pdf 2.0 Use?
59     Pg,            %obj num of starting page, optional
60     K,             %kids
61     A,             %attributes, probably unused
62     C,             %class ""
63     %R,            %attribute revision number, irrelevant for us as we
64                   % don't update/change existing PDF and (probably)
65                   % deprecated in PDF 2.0
66     T,             %title, value in () or <>
67     Lang,          %language
68     Alt,           % value in () or <>
69     E,             % abbreviation
70     ActualText,
71     AF,            %pdf 2.0, array of dict, associated files

```

```

72     NS,                %pdf 2.0, dict, namespace
73     PhoneticAlphabet, %pdf 2.0
74     Phoneme           %pdf 2.0
75 }

```

(End of definition for `\c__tag_struct_StructTreeRoot_entries_seq` and `\c__tag_struct_StructElem_entries_seq`.)

3.1 Variables used by the keys

Use by the tag key to store the tag and the namespace. The roletag variables will hold locally rolemapping info needed for the parent-child checks. The parenttag variables allow to set the target role of the parent of stashed structures.

```

\g__tag_struct_tag_tl
\g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl
\l__tag_struct_roletag_tl
\g__tag_struct_roletag_NS_tl
\l__tag_struct_parenttag_tl
\l__tag_struct_parenttag_NS_tl
76 \tl_new:N \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
77 \tl_new:N \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl
78 \tl_new:N \l__tag_struct_roletag_tl
79 \tl_new:N \l__tag_struct_roletag_NS_tl
80 \tl_new:N \l__tag_struct_parenttag_tl
81 \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_struct_parenttag_tl {STASHED}
82 \tl_new:N \l__tag_struct_parenttag_NS_tl
83 \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_struct_parenttag_NS_tl {latex}

```

(End of definition for `\g__tag_struct_tag_tl` and others.)

`\g__tag_struct_label_num_prop` This will hold for every structure label the associated structure number. The prop will allow to fill the /Ref key directly at the first compilation if the ref key is used.

```
84 \prop_new_linked:N \g__tag_struct_label_num_prop
```

(End of definition for `\g__tag_struct_label_num_prop`.)

`\l__tag_struct_elem_stash_bool` This will keep track of the stash status

```
85 \bool_new:N \l__tag_struct_elem_stash_bool
```

(End of definition for `\l__tag_struct_elem_stash_bool`.)

`\l__tag_struct_addkid_tl` This decides if a structure kid is added at the left or right of the parent. The default is right.

```
86 \tl_new:N \l__tag_struct_addkid_tl
87 \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_struct_addkid_tl {right}

```

(End of definition for `\l__tag_struct_addkid_tl`.)

3.2 Variables used by tagging code of basic elements

`\g__tag_struct_dest_num_prop` This variable records for (some or all, not clear yet) destination names the related structure number to allow to reference them in a Ref. The key is the destination. It is currently used by the toc-tagging and sec-tagging code.

```

88 </package>
89 <base>\prop_new_linked:N \g__tag_struct_dest_num_prop
90 <*package>

```

(End of definition for `\g__tag_struct_dest_num_prop`.)

`\g_tag_struct_ref_by_dest_prop` This variable contains structures whose Ref key should be updated at the end to point to structured related with this destination. As this is probably need in other places too, it is not only a toc-variable. TODO: remove after 11/2024 release.

```
91 \prop_new_linked:N \g_tag_struct_ref_by_dest_prop
```

(End of definition for `\g_tag_struct_ref_by_dest_prop`.)

4 Commands

The properties must be in some places handled expandably. So I need an output handler for each prop, to get expandable output see <https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/424208>. There is probably room here for a more efficient implementation. TODO check if this can now be implemented with the pdfdict commands. The property contains currently non pdf keys, but e.g. object numbers are perhaps no longer needed as we have named object anyway.

```
\_tag_struct_output_prop_aux:nn
\_tag_new_output_prop_handler:n
92 \cs_new:Npn \_tag_struct_output_prop_aux:nn #1 #2 %#1 num, #2 key
93 {
94   \prop_if_in:cnT
95     { g__tag_struct_#1_prop }
96     { #2 }
97   {
98     \c_space_tl/#2~ \prop_item:cn{ g__tag_struct_#1_prop } { #2 }
99   }
100 }
101
102 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_new_output_prop_handler:n #1
103 {
104   \cs_new:cn { \_tag_struct_output_prop_#1:n }
105   {
106     \_tag_struct_output_prop_aux:nn {#1}{#1}
107   }
108 }
109 \</package>
```

(End of definition for `_tag_struct_output_prop_aux:nn` and `_tag_new_output_prop_handler:n`.)

`_tag_struct_prop_gput:nnn` The structure props must be filled in various places. For this we use a common command which also takes care of the debug package:

```
110 \<package | debug>
111 \<package>\cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_struct_prop_gput:nnn #1 #2 #3
112 \<debug>\cs_set_protected:Npn \_tag_struct_prop_gput:nnn #1 #2 #3
113 {
114   \_tag_prop_gput:cnn
115     { g__tag_struct_#1_prop }{#2}{#3}
116 \<debug>\prop_gput:cnn { g__tag_struct_debug_#1_prop } {#2} {#3}
117 }
118 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \_tag_struct_prop_gput:nnn {onn,nne,nee,nno}
119 \</package | debug>
```

(End of definition for `_tag_struct_prop_gput:nnn`.)

4.1 Initialization of the StructTreeRoot

The first structure element, the StructTreeRoot is special, so created manually. The underlying object is @@/struct/1 which is currently created in the tree code (TODO move it here). The ParentTree and RoleMap entries are added at begin document in the tree code as they refer to object which are setup in other parts of the code. This avoid timing issues.

```
120 ⟨*package⟩
121 \tl_gset:Nn \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl {1}

__tag_pdf_name_e:n
122 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_pdf_name_e:n #1{\pdf_name_from_unicode_e:n{#1}}
123 ⟨/package⟩

(End of definition for \__tag_pdf_name_e:n.)

g__tag_struct_1_prop
g__tag_struct_kids_1_seq
124 ⟨*package⟩
125 \__tag_prop_new:c { g__tag_struct_1_prop }
126 \__tag_new_output_prop_handler:n {1}
127 \__tag_seq_new:c { g__tag_struct_kids_1_seq }
128
129 \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
130 { 1 }
131 { Type }
132 { \pdf_name_from_unicode_e:n {StructTreeRoot} }
133
134 \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
135 { 1 }
136 { S }
137 { \pdf_name_from_unicode_e:n {StructTreeRoot} }
138
139 \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
140 { 1 }
141 { tag }
142 { {StructTreeRoot}{pdf} }
143
144 \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
145 { 1 }
146 { rolemap }
147 { {StructTreeRoot}{pdf} }
148
149 \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
150 { 1 }
151 { parentrole }
152 { {StructTreeRoot}{pdf} }
153
```

Namespaces are pdf 2.0. If the code moves into the kernel, the setting must be probably delayed.

```
154 \pdf_version_compare:NnF < {2.0}
155 {
156   \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
157   { 1 }
```

```

158     { Namespaces }
159     { \pdf_object_ref:n { __tag/tree/namespaces } }
160   }
161 \end{package}

```

In debug mode we have to copy the root manually as it is already setup:

```

162 <debug>\prop_new:c { g__tag_struct_debug_1_prop }
163 <debug>\seq_new:c { g__tag_struct_debug_kids_1_seq }
164 <debug>\prop_gset_eq:cc { g__tag_struct_debug_1_prop }{ g__tag_struct_1_prop }
165 <debug>\prop_gremove:cn { g__tag_struct_debug_1_prop }{Namespaces}

```

(End of definition for g__tag_struct_1_prop and g__tag_struct_kids_1_seq.)

4.2 Adding the /ID key

Every structure gets automatically an ID which is currently simply calculated from the structure number.

`__tag_struct_get_id:n`

```

166 <*package>
167 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_struct_get_id:n #1 %#1=struct num
168   {
169     (
170       ID.
171       \prg_replicate:nn
172         { \int_abs:n{\g__tag_tree_id_pad_int - \tl_count:e { \int_to_arabic:n { #1 } }} }
173         { 0 }
174       \int_to_arabic:n { #1 }
175     )
176   }

```

(End of definition for __tag_struct_get_id:n.)

4.3 Filling in the tag info

`__tag_struct_set_tag_info:nnn`

This adds or updates the tag info to a structure given by a number. We need also the original data, so we store both.

```

177 \pdf_version_compare:NnTF < {2.0}
178   {
179     \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_set_tag_info:nnn #1 #2 #3
180       %#1 structure number, #2 tag, #3 NS
181     {
182       \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
183         { #1 }
184         { S }
185         { \pdf_name_from_unicode_e:n {#2} } %
186       \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nnn
187         { #1 }
188         { tag }
189         { {#2} {} }
190     }
191   }
192   {
193     \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_set_tag_info:nnn #1 #2 #3

```

```

194     {
195       \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
196       { #1 }
197       { S }
198       { \pdf_name_from_unicode_e:n {#2} } %
199       \prop_get:NnNT \g__tag_role_NS_prop {#3} \l__tag_get_tmpc_tl
200       {
201         \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
202         { #1 }
203         { NS }
204         { \l__tag_get_tmpc_tl } %
205       }
206       \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nnn
207       { #1 }
208       { tag }
209       { {#2} {#3} }
210     }
211   }
212 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_struct_set_tag_info:nnn {eoo}

```

(End of definition for __tag_struct_set_tag_info:nnn.)

__tag_struct_get_role:nnNN We also need a way to get the tag info needed for parent child check from parent structures. The tag info is stored as the value of the rolemap key, but for “transparent” structures we also have to look into parentrole key.

```

213 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_get_role:nnNN #1 #2 #3 #4
214   %#1 :struct num,
215   %#2 :rolemap or parentrole
216   %#3 :tlvar for tag (rolemapped)
217   %#4 :tlvar for NS (rolemapped, so standard or empty or UNKNOWN)
218   {
219     \prop_get:cnNTF
220     { g__tag_struct_#1_prop }
221     { #2 }
222     \l__tag_get_tmpc_tl
223     {
224       \tl_set:Ne #3{\exp_last_unbraced:No\use_i:nn { \l__tag_get_tmpc_tl }}
225       \tl_set:Ne #4{\exp_last_unbraced:No\use_ii:nn { \l__tag_get_tmpc_tl }}
226     }
227     {
228       \tl_clear:N#3
229       \tl_clear:N#4
230     }
231   }
232 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_struct_get_role:nnNN {enNN}

```

(End of definition for __tag_struct_get_role:nnNN.)

4.4 Handlings kids

Commands to store the kids. Kids in a structure can be a reference to a mc-chunk, an object reference to another structure element, or a object reference to an annotation (through an OBJR object).

_tag_struct_kid_mc_gput_right:nn
_tag_struct_kid_mc_gput_right:ne

The command to store an mc-chunk, this is a dictionary of type MCR. It would be possible to write out the content directly as unnamed object and to store only the object reference, but probably this would be slower, and the PDF is more readable like this. The code doesn't try to avoid the use of the /Pg key by checking page numbers. That imho only slows down without much gain. In generic mode the page break code will perhaps to have to insert an additional mcid after an existing one. For this we use a property list At first an auxiliary to write the MCID dict. This should normally be expanded!

```
233 \cs_new:Npn \_tag_struct_mcid_dict:n #1 %#1 MCID absnum
234 {
235   <<
236   /Type \c_space_tl /MCR \c_space_tl
237   /Pg
238   \c_space_tl
239   \pdf_pageobject_ref:n { \property_ref:enn{mcid-#1}{tagabspage}{1} }
240   /MCID \c_space_tl \property_ref:enn{mcid-#1}{tagmcid}{1}
241   >>
242 }
243 (/package)
244 (*package | debug)
245 (package)\cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_struct_kid_mc_gput_right:nn #1 #2
246 (debug)\cs_set_protected:Npn \_tag_struct_kid_mc_gput_right:nn #1 #2
247 %#1 structure num, #2 MCID absnum%
248 {
249   \_tag_seq_gput_right:ce
250   { g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq }
251   {
252     \_tag_struct_mcid_dict:n {#2}
253   }
254 (debug) \seq_gput_right:cn
255 (debug) { g__tag_struct_debug_kids_#1_seq }
256 (debug) {
257 (debug) MC~#2
258 (debug) }
259 \_tag_seq_gput_right:cn
260 { g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq }
261 {
262 \prop_item:Nn \g__tag_struct_cont_mc_prop {#2}
263 }
264 }
265 (package)\cs_generate_variant:Nn \_tag_struct_kid_mc_gput_right:nn {ne}
(End of definition for \_tag_struct_kid_mc_gput_right:nn.)
```

_tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_right:nn
_tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_right:ee

This commands adds a structure as kid. We only need to record the object reference in the sequence.

```
266 (package)\cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_right:nn #1 #2
267 (debug)\cs_set_protected:Npn \_tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_right:nn #1 #2
268 %#1 num of parent struct, #2 kid struct
269 {
270 \_tag_seq_gput_right:ce
271 { g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq }
272 {
273 \pdf_object_ref_indexed:nn { __tag/struct }{ #2 }

```

```

274     }
275 <debug>     \seq_gput_right:cn
276 <debug>     { g__tag_struct_debug_kids_#1_seq }
277 <debug>     {
278 <debug>         Struct~#2
279 <debug>     }
280 }
281 <package>\cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_right:nn {ee}

```

(End of definition for __tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_right:nn.)

__tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_left:nn
 __tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_left:ee

This commands adds a structure as kid one the left, so as first kid. We only need to record the object reference in the sequence.

```

282 <package>\cs_new_protected:Npn\__tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_left:nn #1 #2
283 <debug>\cs_set_protected:Npn\__tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_left:nn #1 #2
284 %%#1 num of parent struct, #2 kid struct
285 {
286     \__tag_seq_gput_left:ce
287     { g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq }
288     {
289         \pdf_object_ref_indexed:nn { __tag/struct }{ #2 }
290     }
291 <debug>     \seq_gput_left:cn
292 <debug>     { g__tag_struct_debug_kids_#1_seq }
293 <debug>     {
294 <debug>         Struct~#2
295 <debug>     }
296 }
297 <package>\cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_left:nn {ee}

```

(End of definition for __tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_left:nn.)

__tag_struct_kid_OBJR_gput_right:nnn
 __tag_struct_kid_OBJR_gput_right:eee

At last the command to add an OBJR object. This has to write an object first. The first argument is the number of the parent structure, the second the (expanded) object reference of the annotation. The last argument is the page object reference

```

298 <package>\cs_new_protected:Npn\__tag_struct_kid_OBJR_gput_right:nnn #1 #2 #3
299 <package>
300 <package>
301 <debug>\cs_set_protected:Npn\__tag_struct_kid_OBJR_gput_right:nnn #1 #2 #3
302 %%#1 num of parent struct,#2 obj reference,#3 page object reference
303 {
304     \pdf_object_unnamed_write:nn
305     { dict }
306     {
307         /Type/OBJR/Obj~#2/Pg~#3
308     }
309     \__tag_seq_gput_right:ce
310     { g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq }
311     {
312         \pdf_object_ref_last:
313     }
314 <debug>     \seq_gput_right:ce
315 <debug>     { g__tag_struct_debug_kids_#1_seq }
316 <debug>     {

```

```

317 <debug>          OBJR~reference
318 <debug>          }
319 }
320 </package | debug>
321 <*package>
322 \cs_generate_variant:Nn\__tag_struct_kid_OBJR_gput_right:nnn { eee }

(End of definition for \__tag_struct_kid_OBJR_gput_right:nnn.)

```

__tag_struct_exchange_kid_command:N
__tag_struct_exchange_kid_command:c

In luamode it can happen that a single kid in a structure is split at a page break into two or more mcid. In this case the lua code has to convert put the dictionary of the kid into an array. See issue 13 at tagpdf repo. We exchange the dummy command for the kids to mark this case. Change 2024-03-19: don't use a regex - that is slow.

```

323 \cs_new_protected:Npn\__tag_struct_exchange_kid_command:N #1 %#1 = seq var
324 {
325   \seq_gpop_left:NN #1 \l__tag_tmpa_tl
326   \tl_replace_once:Nnn \l__tag_tmpa_tl
327     { \__tag_mc_insert_mcid_kids:n }
328     { \__tag_mc_insert_mcid_single_kids:n }
329   \seq_gput_left:No #1 { \l__tag_tmpa_tl }
330 }
331
332 \cs_generate_variant:Nn\__tag_struct_exchange_kid_command:N { c }

(End of definition for \__tag_struct_exchange_kid_command:N.)

```

__tag_struct_fill_kid_key:n

This command adds the kid info to the K entry. In lua mode the content contains commands which are expanded later. The argument is the structure number.

```

333 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_fill_kid_key:n #1 %#1 is the struct num
334 {
335   \bool_if:NF \g__tag_mode_lua_bool
336   {
337     \seq_clear:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq
338     \seq_map_inline:cn { g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq }
339       { \seq_put_right:Ne \l__tag_tmpa_seq { ##1 } }
340     %\seq_show:c { g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq }
341     %\seq_show:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq
342     \seq_remove_all:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_seq {}
343     %\seq_show:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq
344     \seq_gset_eq:cN { g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq } \l__tag_tmpa_seq
345   }
346
347   \int_case:nnF
348   {
349     \seq_count:c
350     {
351       g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq
352     }
353   }
354   {
355     { 0 }
356     { } %no kids, do nothing
357     { 1 } % 1 kid, insert
358     {

```

```

359 % in this case we need a special command in
360 % luamode to get the array right. See issue #13
361 \sys_if_engine luatex:TF
362 {
363   \__tag_struct_exchange_kid_command:c
364   {g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq}

```

check if we get null

```

365   \tl_set:Nl\l__tag_tmpa_tl
366   {\use:ef\seq_item:cn {g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq} {1}}
367   \tl_if_eq:NNF\l__tag_tmpa_tl \c__tag_struct_null_tl
368   {
369     \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
370     {#1}
371     {K}
372     {
373       \seq_item:cn
374       {
375         g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq
376       }
377       {1}
378     }
379   }
380 }
381 {
382   \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
383   {#1}
384   {K}
385   {
386     \seq_item:cn
387     {
388       g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq
389     }
390     {1}
391   }
392 }
393 } %
394 }
395 { %many kids, use an array
396   \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
397   {#1}
398   {K}
399   {
400     [
401       \seq_use:cn
402       {
403         g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq
404       }
405       {
406         \c_space_tl
407       }
408     ]
409   }
410 }

```

```
411 }
412
```

(End of definition for `__tag_struct_fill_kid_key:n`.)

4.5 Output of the object

`__tag_struct_get_dict_content:nn` This maps the dictionary content of a structure into a tl-var. Basically it does what `\pdfdict_use:n` does. This is used a lot so should be rather fast.

```
413 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_get_dict_content:nn #1 #2 %#1: structure num
414 {
415   \tl_clear:N #2
416   \prop_map_inline:cn { g__tag_struct_#1_prop }
417   {
```

Some keys needs the option to format the value, e.g. add brackets for an array, we also need the option to ignore some entries in the properties.

```
418     \cs_if_exist_use:cTF {__tag_struct_format_##1:nnN}
419     {
420       {##1}{##2}#2
421     }
422     {
423       \tl_put_right:Ne #2 { \c_space_tl/##1-##2 }
424     }
425   }
426 }
```

(End of definition for `__tag_struct_get_dict_content:nn`.)

`__tag_struct_format_rolemap:nnN` This three entries should not end in the PDF. Todo: check if the S/NS keys can be dropped and replaced by a processing of the tag key.

```
\__tag_struct_format_parentrole:nnN
\__tag_struct_format_P:nnN
\__tag_struct_format_tag:nnN
427 \cs_new:Nn\__tag_struct_format_rolemap:nnN{}
428 \cs_new:Nn\__tag_struct_format_parentrole:nnN{}
429 \cs_new:Nn\__tag_struct_format_tag:nnN{}

```

(End of definition for `__tag_struct_format_rolemap:nnN` and others.)

`__tag_struct_format_parentnum:nnN` parent is a structure number and should expand to the object reference.

```
430 \cs_new_protected:Nn\__tag_struct_format_parentnum:nnN
431 {
432   \tl_put_right:Ne #3 { ~/P~\pdf_object_ref_indexed:nn { __tag/struct} { #2 } }
433 }
```

(End of definition for `__tag_struct_format_parentnum:nnN`.)

`__tag_struct_format_Ref:nnN` Ref is an array, we store values as a clist of commands that must be executed here, the formatting has to add also brackets.

```
434 \cs_new_protected:Nn\__tag_struct_format_Ref:nnN
435 {
436   \tl_put_right:Nn #3 { ~/#1-[ ] %]
437   \clist_map_inline:nn{ #2 }
438   {
439     ##1 #3
440   }
```

```

441   \tl_put_right:Nn #3
442   { %[
443     \c_space_tl]
444   }
445 }

```

(End of definition for `__tag_struct_format_Ref:nnN`.)

`__tag_struct_write_obj:n` This writes out the structure object. This is done in the finish code, in the tree module and guarded by the tree boolean.

```

446 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_write_obj:n #1 % #1 is the struct num
447 {
448   \prop_if_exist:cTF { g__tag_struct_#1_prop }
449   {

```

It can happen that a structure is not used and so has not parent. Simply ignoring it is problematic as it is also recorded in the IDTree, so we make an artifact out of it.

```

450     \prop_get:cnNF { g__tag_struct_#1_prop } {parentnum}\l__tag_tmpb_tl
451     {
452 %       \prop_gput:cne { g__tag_struct_#1_prop } {P}
453 %       {\pdf_object_ref_indexed:nn { __tag/struct }{1}}
454     \prop_gput:cne { g__tag_struct_#1_prop } {parentnum}{1}
455     \prop_gput:cne { g__tag_struct_#1_prop } {S}{Artifact}
456     \seq_if_empty:cF {g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq}
457     {
458       \msg_warning:nnee
459       {tag}
460       {struct-orphan}
461       { #1 }
462       {\seq_count:c{g__tag_struct_kids_#1_seq}}
463     }
464   }
465   \__tag_struct_fill_kid_key:n { #1 }
466   \__tag_struct_get_dict_content:nN { #1 } \l__tag_tmpa_tl
467   \pdf_object_write_indexed:nnne
468   { __tag/struct }{ #1 }
469   {dict}
470   {
471     \l__tag_tmpa_tl\c_space_tl
472     /ID~\__tag_struct_get_id:n{#1}
473   }
474 }
475 {
476   \msg_error:nnn { tag } { struct-no-objnum } { #1}
477 }
478 }
479 }

```

(End of definition for `__tag_struct_write_obj:n`.)

`__tag_struct_insert_annot:nn` This is the command to insert an annotation into the structure. It can probably be used for xform too.

Annotations used as structure content must

1. add a StructParent integer to their dictionary

2. push the object reference as OBJR object in the structure
3. Add a Structparent/obj-nr reference to the parent tree.

For a link this looks like this

```

\tag_struct_begin:n { tag=Link }
\tag_mc_begin:n { tag=Link }
(1) \pdfannot_dict_put:nne
    { link/URI }
    { StructParent }
    { \int_use:N\c@g_@@_parenttree_obj_int }
<start link> link text <stop link>
(2+3) \@@_struct_insert_annot:nn {obj ref}{parent num}
\tag_mc_end:
\tag_struct_end:

480 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_insert_annot:nn #1 #2
481   %#1 object reference to the annotation/xform
482   %#2 structparent number
483   {
484     \bool_if:NT \g__tag_active_struct_bool
485     {
486       %get the number of the parent structure:
487       \seq_get:NNF
488         \g__tag_struct_stack_seq
489         \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl
490         {
491           \msg_error:nn { tag } { struct-faulty-nesting }
492         }
493       %put the obj number of the annot in the kid entry, this also creates
494       %the OBJR object
495       \__tag_property_record:nn {@tag@objr@page@#2 }{ tagabspage }
496       \__tag_struct_kid_OBJR_gput_right:eee
497       {
498         \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl
499       }
500       {
501         #1 %
502       }
503       {
504         \pdf_pageobject_ref:n
505         { \property_ref:nnn {@tag@objr@page@#2 }{ tagabspage }{1} }
506       }
507       % add the parent obj number to the parent tree:
508       % the command always expands its arguments!
509       \__tag_parenttree_add_objr:nn
510       {
511         #2
512       }
513       {
514         \pdf_object_ref_indexed:nn
515         { __tag/struct }{ \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl }
516       }

```

```

517         % increase the int:
518         \int_gincr:N \c@g__tag_parenttree_obj_int
519     }
520 }

```

(End of definition for `__tag_struct_insert_annot:nn`.)

`__tag_struct_insert_annot_shipout:nnn`

This command is similar to the previous one but is meant to be used at shipout (currently only sensible for luatex). To move the OBJR into the right structure it has to get the structure number additionally as argument. But as it is used at shipout it doesn't need a label to get the page reference but can use `\g_shipout_readonly_int`. It does *not* increase the parenttree integer (timing is wrong in lua), instead code using the command has to do it. See the lua code.

```

521 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_insert_annot_shipout:nnn #1#2#3
522 % #1 structnum, #2 object reference, #3 StructParentNum
523 {
524     \__tag_struct_kid_OBJR_gput_right:eee
525     {
526         #1
527     }
528     {
529         #2
530     }
531     {
532         \pdf_pageobject_ref:n
533         { \int_use:N \g_shipout_readonly_int } %
534     }
535     % add the parent obj number to the parent tree:
536     % the command always expands its arguments!
537     \__tag_parenttree_add_objr:nn
538     {
539         #3
540     }
541     {
542         \pdf_object_ref_indexed:nn
543         { __tag/struct }{ #1 }
544     }
545 }

```

(End of definition for `__tag_struct_insert_annot_shipout:nnn`.)

`__tag_get_data_struct_tag:`

this command allows `\tag_get:n` to get the current structure tag with the keyword `struct_tag`.

```

546 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_get_data_struct_tag:
547 {
548     \exp_args:Ne
549     \tl_tail:n
550     {
551         \prop_item:cn {g__tag_struct_\g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl _prop}{S}
552     }
553 }

```

(End of definition for `__tag_get_data_struct_tag:.`)

`__tag_get_data_struct_id:` this command allows `\tag_get:n` to get the current structure id with the keyword `struct_id`.

```
554 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_get_data_struct_id:
555   {
556     \__tag_struct_get_id:n {\g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl}
557   }
558 \</package>
```

(End of definition for `__tag_get_data_struct_id:.`)

`__tag_get_data_struct_num:` this command allows `\tag_get:n` to get the current structure number with the keyword `struct_num`. We will need to handle nesting

```
559 \< *base >
560 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_get_data_struct_num:
561   {
562     \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl
563   }
564 \</base >
```

(End of definition for `__tag_get_data_struct_num:.`)

`__tag_get_data_struct_counter:` this command allows `\tag_get:n` to get the current state of the structure counter with the keyword `struct_counter`. By comparing the numbers it can be used to check the number of structure commands in a piece of code.

```
565 \< *base >
566 \cs_new:Npn \__tag_get_data_struct_counter:
567   {
568     \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int
569   }
570 \</base >
```

(End of definition for `__tag_get_data_struct_counter:.`)

4.6 Commands for the parent-child checks

`__tag_struct_check_parent_child_aux:nnnnN`

```
571 \< *package >
572 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_check_parent_child_aux:nnnnN #1#2#3#4#5
573   {
574     % #1 structure number of parent
575     % #2 key to use to retrieve role of parent (either rolemap or parentrole field)
576     % #3 structure number of parent
577     % #4 key to use to retrieve role of child (either rolemap or parentrole field)
578     % #5 tl for return value
579     get_parent_rolemap
580     \__tag_struct_get_role:nnNN
581     {#1}
582     {#2}
583     \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl
584     \l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl
```

get child rolemap

```
584 \__tag_struct_get_role:nnNN
585   {#3}
586   {#4}
587   \l__tag_get_child_tmpa_tl
588   \l__tag_get_child_tmpb_tl
```

check

```
589 \__tag_role_check_parent_child:ooooN
590   { \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl } % rolemapped from above
591   { \l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl } % rolemapped from above
592   { \l__tag_get_child_tmpa_tl } %
593   { \l__tag_get_child_tmpb_tl } %
594   #5
595 }
```

(End of definition for __tag_struct_check_parent_child_aux:nmmnN.)

__tag_struct_check_parent_child:nn

When comparing the relation between structures we use the structure numbers.

```
596 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_check_parent_child:nn #1 #2
597 % #1 structure number of parent
598 % #2 structure number of child. %
599 % This assumes that the fields rolemap/parentrole has already been filled.
600 {
```

This records if logging is on

```
601 \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_loglevel_int} > { 0 }
602 {
603   \prop_get:cnN{g__tag_struct_#1_prop}{tag}\l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl
604   \prop_get:cnN{g__tag_struct_#2_prop}{tag}\l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl
605   \msg_note:nnee
606   { tag }
607   { role-parent-child-check }
608   {
609     \quark_if_no_value:NTF \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl
610     {??}
611     {
612       \exp_last_unbraced:No\use_ii:nn
613       { \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl }
614       :
615       \exp_last_unbraced:No\use_i:nn
616       { \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl }
617     }
618   }
619   {
620     \quark_if_no_value:NTF \l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl
621     {??}
622     {
623       \exp_last_unbraced:No\use_ii:nn
624       { \l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl }
625       :
626       \exp_last_unbraced:No\use_i:nn
627       { \l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl }
628     }
629   }
}
```

```

630     }
631     \_tag_struct_check_parent_child_aux:nnnnN
632     {#1}
633     {rolemap}
634     {#2}
635     {rolemap}
636     \l__tag_parent_child_check_tl

```

if the return value is 7 we have to check against the parentrole field.

```

637     \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_parent_child_check_tl} = { \c__tag_role_rule_checkparent_tl }
638     {
639         \_tag_struct_check_parent_child_aux:nnnnN
640         {#1}
641         {parentrole}
642         {#2}
643         {rolemap}
644         \l__tag_parent_child_check_tl
645     }
646     \_tag_check_struct_forbidden_parent_child:onn
647     {\l__tag_parent_child_check_tl}
648     {#1}
649     {#2}
650 }
651 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \_tag_struct_check_parent_child:nn {oo}

```

(End of definition for _tag_struct_check_parent_child:nn.)

_tag_struct_use_check_parent_child:nn

A similar command is needed if a structure is stashed and used. The child can be - a normal tag (e.g. H1) then rolemap = parentrole = H1pdf2 and we should test rolemap (parent) and rolemap (child) if = 7 parentrole (parent) and rolemap (child) That is the normal check above.

- Part/Div/Nonstruct then rolemap = Partpdf2 and parentrole = STASHEDlatex or target parentNS

If parentrole =STASHED we can't test if the child fits here. If parentrole is not STASHED, then would should test if target parent= rolemap (parent) or parentrole (parent) and if yet then test rolemap (child) against rolemap (parent) and if =7 rolemap(child) against parentrole(parent). that is again the normal check.

```

652 \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_struct_use_check_parent_child:nn #1 #2
653 % #1 structure number of parent
654 % #2 structure number of child. %
655 {
656     \_tag_struct_get_role:enNN
657     {#2}
658     {rolemap}
659     \l__tag_get_child_tmpa_tl
660     \l__tag_get_child_tmpb_tl
661     \str_case:onTF { \l__tag_get_child_tmpa_tl }
662     {
663         {Part} {}
664         {Div} {}
665         {NonStruct} {}
666     }
667     { %child=Part etc
668         \_tag_struct_get_role:enNN

```

```

669     {#2}
670     {parentrole}
671     \l__tag_get_child_tmpa_tl
672     \l__tag_get_child_tmpb_tl
673     \str_if_eq:noTF
674     {STASHED}{\l__tag_get_child_tmpa_tl}
675     {
676     % warn about unknown relationship
677     }
678     {
679     % test if
680     \__tag_struct_get_role:enNN
681     {#1}
682     {parentrole}
683     \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl
684     \l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl
685     \tl_if_eq:NNTF\l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl \l__tag_get_child_tmpa_tl
686     {
687     \__tag_struct_check_parent_child:nn {#1}{#2}
688     }
689     {
690     %warn that parent-tag was misused.
691     }
692     }
693     }
694     {
695     %child not Part etc, normal parent child test.
696     \__tag_struct_check_parent_child:nn {#1}{#2}
697     }
698     }
699     \cs_generate_variant:Nn { \__tag_struct_use_check_parent_child:nn }{oo}

```

(End of definition for __tag_struct_use_check_parent_child:nn.)

5 Keys

This are the keys for the user commands. we store the tag in a variable. But we should be careful, it is only reliable at the begin.

This socket is used by the tag key. It allows to switch between the latex-tabs and the standard tags.

```

700 \socket_new:nn { tag/struct/tag }{1}
701 \socket_new_plug:nnn { tag/struct/tag }{ latex-tags }
702 {
703     \prop_get:NeNTF \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop {#1} \l__tag_tmp_unused_tl
704     {
705     \seq_set_split:Nne \l__tag_tmpa_seq { / }
706     {#1/\l__tag_tmp_unused_tl}
707     }
708     {
709     \seq_set_split:Nne \l__tag_tmpa_seq { / }
710     {#1/}
711     }
712     \tl_gset:Ne \g__tag_struct_tag_tl { \seq_item:Nn\l__tag_tmpa_seq {1} }

```

```

713 \tl_gset:Ne \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl{ \seq_item:Nn\l__tag_tmpa_seq {2} }
714 \__tag_check_structure_tag:N \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
715 }
716
717 \socket_new_plug:nnn { tag/struct/tag }{ pdf-tags }
718 {
719 \prop_get:NeNTF \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop {#1} \l__tag_tmp_unused_tl
720 {
721 \seq_set_split:Nne \l__tag_tmpa_seq { / }
722 {#1/\l__tag_tmp_unused_tl}
723 }
724 {
725 \seq_set_split:Nne \l__tag_tmpa_seq { / }
726 {#1/}
727 }
728 \tl_gset:Ne \g__tag_struct_tag_tl { \seq_item:Nn\l__tag_tmpa_seq {1} }
729 \tl_gset:Ne \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl{ \seq_item:Nn\l__tag_tmpa_seq {2} }
730 \__tag_role_get:ooNN
731 { \g__tag_struct_tag_tl }
732 { \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl}
733 \l__tag_tmpa_tl
734 \l__tag_tmpb_tl
735 \tl_gset:Ne \g__tag_struct_tag_tl {\l__tag_tmpa_tl}
736 \tl_gset:Ne \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl{\l__tag_tmpb_tl}
737 \__tag_check_structure_tag:N \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
738 }
739 \socket_assign_plug:nn { tag/struct/tag } { latex-tags }

```

```

label (struct key)
stash (struct key) 740 \keys_define:nn { __tag / struct }
parent (struct key) 741 {
firstkid (struct key) 742 label .code:n =
tag (struct key) 743 {
title (struct key) 744 \prop_gput:Nee\g__tag_struct_label_num_prop
title-o (struct key) 745 {#1}{\int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}
alt (struct key) 746 \__tag_property_record:eo
actualtext (struct key) 747 {tagpdfstruct-#1}
lang (struct key) 748 { \c__tag_property_struct_clist }
ref (struct key) 749 },
E (struct key) 750 stash .bool_set:N = \l__tag_struct_elem_stash_bool,
phoneme (struct key) 751 parent .code:n =
752 {
753 \bool_lazy_and:nnTF
754 {
755 \prop_if_exist_p:c { g__tag_struct_\int_eval:n {#1}_prop }
756 }
757 {
758 \int_compare_p:nNn {#1}<{\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}
759 }
760 { \tl_set:Ne \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl { \int_eval:n {#1} } }
761 {
762 \msg_warning:nnee { tag } { struct-unknown }
763 { \int_eval:n {#1} }
764 { parent~key~ignored }

```

```

765     }
766   },
767   parent .default:n    = {-1},
768   parent-tag .code:n =
769   {
770     \prop_get:NeNTF \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop {#1} \l__tag_tmp_unused_tl
771     {
772       \seq_set_split:Nne \l__tag_tmpa_seq { / }
773       {#1/\l__tag_tmp_unused_tl}
774     }
775     {
776       \seq_set_split:Nne \l__tag_tmpa_seq { / }
777       {#1/}
778     }
779     \tl_set:Ne \l__tag_struct_parenttag_tl { \seq_item:Nn\l__tag_tmpa_seq {1} }
780     \tl_set:Ne \l__tag_struct_parenttag_NS_tl{ \seq_item:Nn\l__tag_tmpa_seq {2} }
781     \__tag_role_get:ooNN
782     { \l__tag_struct_parenttag_tl }
783     { \l__tag_struct_parenttag_NS_tl}
784     \l__tag_tmpa_tl
785     \l__tag_tmpb_tl
786     \tl_set:No \l__tag_struct_parenttag_tl { \l__tag_tmpa_tl}
787     \tl_set:No \l__tag_struct_parenttag_NS_tl{ \l__tag_tmpb_tl}
788     \__tag_check_structure_tag:N \l__tag_struct_parenttag_tl
789   },
790   firstkid .code:n = { \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_struct_addkid_tl {left} },
791   tag .code:n      = % S property
792   {
793     \socket_use:nn { tag/struct/tag }{#1}
794   },
795   title .code:n    = % T property
796   {
797     \str_set_convert:Nnnn
798     \l__tag_tmpa_str
799     { #1 }
800     { default }
801     { utf16/hex }
802     \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
803     { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
804     { T }
805     { <\l__tag_tmpa_str> }
806   },
807   title-o .code:n  = % T property
808   {
809     \str_set_convert:Nonn
810     \l__tag_tmpa_str
811     { #1 }
812     { default }
813     { utf16/hex }
814     \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
815     { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
816     { T }
817     { <\l__tag_tmpa_str> }
818   },

```

```

819 alt .code:n      = % Alt property
820 {
821   \tl_if_empty:oF{#1}
822   {
823     \str_set_convert:Noon
824     \l__tag_tmpa_str
825     { #1 }
826     { default }
827     { utf16/hex }
828     \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
829     { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
830     { Alt }
831     { <\l__tag_tmpa_str> }
832   }
833 },
834 alttext .meta:n = {alt=#1},
835 actualtext .code:n = % ActualText property
836 {
837   \tl_if_empty:oF{#1}
838   {
839     \str_set_convert:Noon
840     \l__tag_tmpa_str
841     { #1 }
842     { default }
843     { utf16/hex }
844     \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
845     { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
846     { ActualText }
847     { <\l__tag_tmpa_str>}
848   }
849 },
850 phoneme .code:n = % Phoneme property
851 {
852   \tl_if_empty:oF{#1}
853   {
854     \str_set_convert:Noon
855     \l__tag_tmpa_str
856     { #1 }
857     { default }
858     { utf16/hex }
859     \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
860     { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
861     { Phoneme }
862     { <\l__tag_tmpa_str>}
863   }
864 },
865 lang .code:n      = % Lang property
866 {
867   \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
868   { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
869   { Lang }
870   { (#1) }
871 },
872 }

```

Ref is rather special as its values are often known only at the end of the document. It therefore stores its values as a list of commands which are executed at the end of the document, when the structure elements are written.

`__tag_struct_Ref_obj:nN` this command is a helper command that is stored as a list in the Ref key of a structure.
`__tag_struct_Ref_label:nN` They are executed when the structure elements are written in `__tag_struct_write_obj`. They are used in `__tag_struct_format_Ref`. They allow to add a Ref by object reference, label, destname and structure number
`__tag_struct_Ref_dest:nN`
`__tag_struct_Ref_num:nN`

```

873 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_Ref_obj:nN #1 #2 %#1 a object reference
874 {
875   \tl_put_right:Ne#2
876   {
877     \c_space_tl#1
878   }
879 }
880
881 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_Ref_label:nN #1 #2 %#1 a label
882 {
883   \prop_get:NnNTF \g__tag_struct_label_num_prop {#1} \l__tag_tmpb_tl
884   {
885     \tl_put_right:Ne#2
886     {
887       \c_space_tl\tag_struct_object_ref:e{ \l__tag_tmpb_tl }
888     }
889   }
890   {
891     \msg_warning:nnn {tag}{struct-Ref-unknown}{Label~'#1'}
892   }
893 }
894 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_Ref_dest:nN #1 #2 %#1 a dest name
895 {
896   \prop_get:NnNTF \g__tag_struct_dest_num_prop {#1} \l__tag_tmpb_tl
897   {
898     \tl_put_right:Ne#2
899     {
900       \c_space_tl\tag_struct_object_ref:e{ \l__tag_tmpb_tl }
901     }
902   }
903   {
904     \msg_warning:nnn {tag}{struct-Ref-unknown}{Destination~'#1'}
905   }
906 }
907 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_Ref_num:nN #1 #2 %#1 a structure number
908 {
909   \tl_put_right:Ne#2
910   {
911     \c_space_tl\tag_struct_object_ref:e{ #1 }
912   }
913 }
914

```

(End of definition for `__tag_struct_Ref_obj:nN` and others.)

ref (struct key)
E (struct key)


```

915 \keys_define:nn { __tag / struct }
916 {
917   ref .code:n      = % ref property
918   {
919     \clist_map_inline:on {#1}
920     {
921       \tag_struct_gput:nne
922       {\int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}{ref_label}{ ##1 }
923     }
924   },
925   E .code:n      = % E property
926   {
927     \str_set_convert:Nnon
928     \l__tag_tmpa_str
929     { #1 }
930     { default }
931     { utf16/hex }
932     \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
933     { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
934     { E }
935     { <\l__tag_tmpa_str> }
936   },
937 }

```

AF (*struct key*) keys for the AF keys (associated files). They use commands from l3pdffile! The stream
AFref (*struct key*) variants use txt as extension to get the mimetype. TODO: check if this should be
AFinline (*struct key*) configurable. For math we will perhaps need another extension. AF/AFref is an array
AFinline-o (*struct key*) and can be used more than once, so we store it in a tl. which is expanded. AFinline
texsource (*struct key*) currently uses the fix extension txt. texsource is a special variant which creates a tex-file,
mathml (*struct key*) it expects a tl-var as value (e.g. from math grabbing)

`\g__tag_struct_AFobj_int` This variable is used to number the AF-object names

```

938 \int_new:N\g__tag_struct_AFobj_int
(End of definition for \g__tag_struct_AFobj_int.)
939 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \pdffile_embed_stream:nnN {neN}
940 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_add_inline_AF:nn #1 #2
941 % #1 content, #2 extension
942 {
943   \tl_if_empty:nF{#1}
944   {
945     \group_begin:
946     \int_gincr:N \g__tag_struct_AFobj_int
947     \pdffile_embed_stream:neN
948     {#1}
949     {tag-AFfile\int_use:N\g__tag_struct_AFobj_int.#2}
950     \l__tag_tmpa_tl
951     \__tag_struct_add_AF:ee
952     { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
953     { \l__tag_tmpa_tl }
954     \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
955     { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
956     { AF }
957     {

```

```

958         [
959             \tl_use:c
960             { g__tag_struct_\int_eval:n {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}_AF_tl }
961         ]
962     }
963     \group_end:
964 }
965 }
966
967 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_struct_add_inline_AF:nn {on}
968 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_add_AF:nn #1 #2
969 % #1 struct num #2 object reference
970 {
971     \tl_if_exist:cTF
972     {
973         g__tag_struct_#1_AF_tl
974     }
975     {
976         \tl_gput_right:ce
977         { g__tag_struct_#1_AF_tl }
978         { \c_space_tl #2 }
979     }
980     {
981         \tl_new:c
982         { g__tag_struct_#1_AF_tl }
983         \tl_gset:ce
984         { g__tag_struct_#1_AF_tl }
985         { #2 }
986     }
987 }
988 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_struct_add_AF:nn {en,ee}
989 \keys_define:nn { __tag / struct }
990 {
991     AF .code:n          = % AF property
992     {
993         \pdf_object_if_exist:eTF {#1}
994         {
995             \__tag_struct_add_AF:ee
996             { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }{\pdf_object_ref:e {#1}}
997             \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
998             { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
999             { AF }
1000            {
1001                [
1002                    \tl_use:c
1003                    { g__tag_struct_\int_eval:n {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}_AF_tl }
1004                ]
1005            }
1006        }
1007        {
1008            % message?
1009        }
1010    },
1011     AFref .code:n      = % AF property

```

```

1012 {
1013   \tl_if_empty:eF {#1}
1014   {
1015     \__tag_struct_add_AF:ee { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }{#1}
1016     \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
1017       { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
1018       { AF }
1019       {
1020         [
1021           \tl_use:c
1022           { g__tag_struct_\int_eval:n {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}_AF_tl }
1023         ]
1024       }
1025     }
1026   },
1027 ,AFinline .code:n =
1028   {
1029     \__tag_struct_add_inline_AF:nn {#1}{txt}
1030   }
1031 ,AFinline-o .code:n =
1032   {
1033     \__tag_struct_add_inline_AF:on {#1}{txt}
1034   }
1035 ,texsource .code:n =
1036   {
1037     \group_begin:
1038     \pdfdict_put:nnn { l_pdffile/Filespec } {Desc}{(TeX~source)}
1039     \pdfdict_put:nnn { l_pdffile/Filespec }{AFRelationship} { /Source }
1040     \__tag_struct_add_inline_AF:on {#1}{tex}
1041     \group_end:
1042   }
1043 ,mathml .code:n =
1044   {
1045     \group_begin:
1046     \pdfdict_put:nnn { l_pdffile/Filespec } {Desc}{(mathml~representation)}
1047     \pdfdict_put:nnn { l_pdffile/Filespec }{AFRelationship} { /Supplement }
1048     \pdfdict_put:nne { l_pdffile }{Subtype}
1049     { \pdf_name_from_unicode_e:n{application/mathml+xml} }
1050     \__tag_struct_add_inline_AF:on {#1}{xml}
1051     \group_end:
1052   }
1053 }

```

root-AF (*setup key*) The root structure can take AF keys too, so we provide a key for it. This key is used with `\tagpdfsetup`, not in a structure!

```

1054 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
1055 {
1056   root-AF .code:n =
1057   {
1058     \pdf_object_if_exist:nTF {#1}
1059     {
1060       \__tag_struct_add_AF:ee { 1 }{\pdf_object_ref:n {#1}}
1061       \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
1062       { 1 }

```

```

1063         { AF }
1064         {
1065           [
1066             \tl_use:c
1067             { g__tag_struct_1_AF_t1 }
1068           ]
1069         }
1070       }
1071     {
1072     }
1073   }
1074 },
1075 }

```

`root-supplemental-file` (*setup key*) This key allows to add a file as root-AF with relationship Supplement. This is typically need to add a css or an html

```

1076 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
1077 {
1078   root-supplemental-file .code:n =
1079   {
1080     \group_begin:
1081     \pdfdict_put:nnn {l_pdffile/Filespec} {AFRelationship}{/Supplement}
1082     \int_gincr:N \g__tag_unique_cnt_int
1083     \pdffile_embed_file:eee
1084     {#1}
1085     {#1}
1086     {__tag_latex_css_\int_use:N\g__tag_unique_cnt_int}
1087     \keys_set:nn
1088     {__tag / setup}
1089     {root-AF={__tag_latex_css_\int_use:N\g__tag_unique_cnt_int}}
1090     \group_end:
1091   }
1092 }

```

`log-supplemental-file` (*setup key*) This key allows to add a file as AF with relationship Supplement to the Catalog. This is typically need to add a css or an html.

```

1093 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
1094 {
1095   catalog-supplemental-file .code:n =
1096   {
1097     \group_begin:
1098     \pdfdict_put:nnn {l_pdffile/Filespec} {AFRelationship}{/Supplement}
1099     \int_gincr:N \g__tag_unique_cnt_int
1100     \pdffile_embed_file:eee
1101     {#1}
1102     {#1}
1103     {__tag_latex_css_\int_use:N\g__tag_unique_cnt_int}
1104     \pdfmanagement_add:nne
1105     {Catalog}
1106     {AF}
1107     {\pdf_object_ref:e{__tag_latex_css_\int_use:N\g__tag_unique_cnt_int }}
1108     \group_end:
1109   }
1110 }

```

6 User commands

We allow to set a language by default

`\l__tag_struct_lang_tl`

```
1111 \tl_new:N \l__tag_struct_lang_tl
1112 </package>
```

(End of definition for `\l__tag_struct_lang_tl`.)

`\tag_struct_begin:n`

`\tag_struct_end:`

```
1113 <base>\cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_struct_begin:n #1 {\int_gincr:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}
1114 <base>\cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_struct_end: {}
1115 <base>\cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_struct_end:n {}
1116 <*package | debug>
1117 <package>\cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_struct_begin:n #1 %#1 key-val
1118 <debug>\cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_struct_begin:n #1 %#1 key-val
1119 {
1120 <package>\__tag_check_if_active_struct:T
1121 <debug>\__tag_check_if_active_struct:TF
1122 {
1123     \group_begin:
1124     \int_gincr:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int
1125     \__tag_prop_new:c { g__tag_struct \int_eval:n { \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }_prop }
1126 <debug>     \prop_new:c { g__tag_struct_debug \int_eval:n { \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }_prop
1127     \__tag_new_output_prop_handler:n { \int_eval:n { \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int } }
1128     \__tag_seq_new:c { g__tag_struct_kids \int_eval:n { \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }_seq }
1129 <debug>     \seq_new:c { g__tag_struct_debug_kids \int_eval:n { \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }_
1130     \pdf_object_new_indexed:nn { __tag/struct }
1131     { \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
1132     \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nnn
1133     { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
1134     { Type }
1135     { /StructElem }
1136     \tl_if_empty:NF \l__tag_struct_lang_tl
1137     {
1138         \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
1139         { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
1140         { Lang }
1141         { (\l__tag_struct_lang_tl) }
1142     }
1143     \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nnn
1144     { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
1145     { Type }
1146     { /StructElem }
1147
1148     \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl {-1}
1149     \keys_set:nn { __tag / struct } { #1 }
1150
1151     \__tag_struct_set_tag_info:eoo
1152     { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
1153     { \g__tag_struct_tag_tl }
1154     { \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl }
1155     \__tag_check_structure_has_tag:n { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
```

The structure number of the parent is either taken from the stack or has been set with the parent key.

```

1155     \int_compare:nNnT { \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl } = { -1 }
1156     {
1157         \seq_get:NNF
1158             \g__tag_struct_stack_seq
1159             \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl
1160         {
1161             \msg_error:nn { tag } { struct-faulty-nesting }
1162         }
1163     }
1164     \seq_gpush:NV \g__tag_struct_stack_seq \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int
1165     \__tag_role_get:ooNN
1166     { \g__tag_struct_tag_tl }
1167     { \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl }
1168     \l__tag_struct_roletag_tl
1169     \l__tag_struct_roletag_NS_tl

```

We push the role tag on the stack:

```

1170     \seq_gpush:Ne \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq
1171     { {\g__tag_struct_tag_tl}{\l__tag_struct_roletag_tl} }
1172     \tl_gset:NV \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int
1173     \__tag_struct_set_attribute:
1174     %\seq_show:N \g__tag_struct_stack_seq

```

the rolemapped role and its NS are stored in the rolemap key.

```

1175     \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
1176     { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
1177     { rolemap }
1178     {
1179         { \l__tag_struct_roletag_tl } { \l__tag_struct_roletag_NS_tl }
1180     }

```

If the role is one of Part, Div, NonStruct we have to (sometimes) retrieve the “real” parent for the parent/child test. The role of this real parent is stored in the key `parentrole`. If the current structure is stashed we use UNKNOWN as real parent if the current structure is rolemapped to Part, Div or NonStruct so that the children can detect that no reliable check is possible. For structures that are not rolemapped to Part, Div, NonStruct, `parentrole` and `rolemap` are always equal.

```

1181     \str_case:onTF { \l__tag_struct_roletag_tl }
1182     {
1183         {Part} {}
1184         {Div} {}
1185         {NonStruct} {}
1186     }
1187     {
1188         \bool_if:NTF \l__tag_struct_elem_stash_bool
1189         {
1190             \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
1191             { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
1192             { parentrole }
1193             {
1194                 { \l__tag_struct_parenttag_tl } { \l__tag_struct_parenttag_NS_tl }
1195             }

```

```

1196     }
1197     {
1198         \prop_get:cnNT
1199         { g__tag_struct_ \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl _prop }
1200         { parentrole }
1201         \l__tag_get_tmpc_tl
1202         {
1203             \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nno
1204             { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
1205             { parentrole }
1206             {
1207                 \l__tag_get_tmpc_tl
1208             }
1209         }
1210     }
1211 }
1212 {
1213     \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
1214     { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
1215     { parentrole }
1216     {
1217         {\l__tag_struct_roletag_tl}{\l__tag_struct_roletag_NS_tl}
1218     }
1219 }
1220 \bool_if:NF
1221 \l__tag_struct_elem_stash_bool
1222 {

```

check if the tag can be used inside the parent. It only makes sense, if the structure is actually used here, so it is guarded by the stash boolean.

```

1223     \socket_use:nn{tag/check/parent-child}
1224     {
1225         \__tag_struct_check_parent_child:oo
1226         { \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl }
1227         { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
1228     }

```

Set the Parent structure number.

```

1229     \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
1230     { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
1231     { parentnum }
1232     {
1233         \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl
1234     }
1235     %record this structure as kid:
1236     %\tl_show:N \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl
1237     %\tl_show:N \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl
1238     \use:c { __tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_ \l__tag_struct_addkid_tl :ee }
1239     { \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl }
1240     { \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl }
1241     %\prop_show:c { g__tag_struct_\g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl _prop }
1242     %\seq_show:c {g__tag_struct_kids_\l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl _seq}
1243 }

```

the debug mode stores in second prop and replaces value with more suitable ones. (If the structure is updated later this gets perhaps lost, but well ...) This must be done outside of the stash boolean.

```

1244 <debug>          \prop_gset_eq:cc
1245 <debug>          { g__tag_struct_debug\_int_eval:n {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
1246 <debug>          { g__tag_struct\_int_eval:n {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
1247 <debug>          \prop_gput:cne
1248 <debug>          { g__tag_struct_debug\_int_eval:n {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
1249 <debug>          { parentnum }
1250 <debug>          {
1251 <debug>              \bool_if:NTF \l__tag_struct_elem_stash_bool
1252 <debug>              {no~parent:~stashed}
1253 <debug>              {
1254 <debug>                  \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl\c_space_tl =~
1255 <debug>                  \prop_item:cn{ g__tag_struct\_l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl _p
1256 <debug>              }
1257 <debug>          }
1258 <debug>          \prop_gput:cne
1259 <debug>          { g__tag_struct_debug\_int_eval:n {\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
1260 <debug>          { NS }
1261 <debug>          { \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl }

1262          %\prop_show:c { g__tag_struct\_g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl _prop }
1263          %\seq_show:c {g__tag_struct_kids\_l__tag_struct_stack_parent_tmpa_tl _seq}
1264 <debug> \__tag_debug_struct_begin_insert:n { #1 }
1265          \group_end:
1266      }
1267 <debug>{ \__tag_debug_struct_begin_ignore:n { #1 }}
1268     }
1269 <package>\cs_set_protected:Nn \tag_struct_end:
1270 <debug>\cs_set_protected:Nn \tag_struct_end:
1271     { %take the current structure num from the stack:
1272       %the objects are written later, lua mode hasn't all needed info yet
1273       %\seq_show:N \g__tag_struct_stack_seq
1274 <package>\__tag_check_if_active_struct:T
1275 <debug>\__tag_check_if_active_struct:TF
1276     {
1277       \seq_gpop:NN \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq \l__tag_tmpa_tl
1278       \seq_gpop:NNTF \g__tag_struct_stack_seq \l__tag_tmpa_tl
1279       {
1280         \__tag_check_info_closing_struct:o { \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl }
1281       }
1282       { \__tag_check_no_open_struct: }
1283       % get the previous one, shouldn't be empty as the root should be there
1284       \seq_get:NNTF \g__tag_struct_stack_seq \l__tag_tmpa_tl
1285       {
1286         \tl_gset:No \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl { \l__tag_tmpa_tl }
1287         \__tag_struct_set_attribute:
1288       }
1289       {
1290         \__tag_check_no_open_struct:
1291       }
1292       \seq_get:NNT \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq \l__tag_tmpa_tl
1293     }

```



```

1294         \tl_gset:Ne \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
1295         { \exp_last_unbraced:No\use_i:nn { \l__tag_tmpa_tl } }
1296     \prop_get:NoNT\g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop { \g__tag_struct_tag_tl } \l__tag_tmpa_tl
1297     {
1298         \tl_gset:Ne \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl { \l__tag_tmpa_tl }
1299     }
1300 }
1301 <debug>\__tag_debug_struct_end_insert:
1302     }
1303 <debug>{\__tag_debug_struct_end_ignore:}
1304 }
1305
1306 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_struct_end:n #1
1307 {
1308     <debug>    \__tag_check_if_active_struct:T{\__tag_debug_struct_end_check:n{#1}}
1309     \tag_struct_end:
1310 }
1311 </package | debug>

```

(End of definition for \tag_struct_begin:n and \tag_struct_end:. These functions are documented on page 110.)

\tag_struct_use:n This command allows to use a stashed structure in another place. TODO: decide how it should be guarded. Probably by the struct-check.

```

1312 <base>\cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_struct_use:n #1 {}
1313 <*package | debug>
1314 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_struct_use:n #1 %#1 is the label
1315 {
1316     \__tag_check_if_active_struct:T
1317     {
1318         \prop_if_exist:cTF
1319         { \g__tag_struct_property_ref:enn{tagpdfstruct-#1}{tagstruct}{unknown}_prop } %
1320         {
1321             \__tag_check_struct_used:n {#1}
1322             \tl_set:Ne \l__tag_get_child_tmpa_tl
1323             { \property_ref:enn{tagpdfstruct-#1}{tagstruct}{1} }

```

add the label structure as kid to the current structure (can be the root)

```

1324         \__tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_right:ee
1325         { \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl }
1326         { \l__tag_get_child_tmpa_tl }

```

add the current structure to the labeled one as parents

```

1327         \__tag_prop_gput:cne
1328         { \g__tag_struct_ \l__tag_get_child_tmpa_tl _prop }
1329         { parentnum }
1330         {
1331             \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl
1332         }

```

debug code

```

1333 <debug>    \prop_gput:cne
1334 <debug>    { \g__tag_struct_debug_ \l__tag_get_child_tmpa_tl _prop }
1335 <debug>    { parentnum }
1336 <debug>    {
1337 <debug>    { \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl\c_space_tl=~

```

```

1338 <debug>          \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
1339 <debug>          }

```

check if the tag is allowed as child. If the tag of the child after rolemapping is *not* one of Part, Div, NonStruct, then the parentrole field will be identically to the rolemapping field and can be used for a check. Otherwise the parentrole will contain latex:STASHED (if not changed with the `parent-tag` key when the structure was stashed) and will produce a warning.

```

1340          \socket_use:nn{tag/check/parent-child}
1341          {
1342              \__tag_struct_use_check_parent_child:oo
1343              { \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl }
1344              { \l__tag_get_child_tmpa_tl }
1345          }
1346      }
1347      {
1348          \msg_warning:nnn{ tag }{struct-label-unknown}{#1}
1349      }
1350  }
1351 }
1352 </package | debug>

```

(End of definition for `\tag_struct_use:n`. This function is documented on page 110.)

`\tag_struct_use_num:n` This command allows to use a stashed structure in another place. differently to the previous command it doesn't use a label but directly a structure number to find the parent. TODO: decide how it should be guarded. Probably by the struct-check.

```

1353 <base>\cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_struct_use_num:n #1 {}
1354 <*package | debug>
1355 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_struct_use_num:n #1 %#1 is structure number
1356 {
1357     \__tag_check_if_active_struct:T
1358     {
1359         \prop_if_exist:cTF
1360         { g__tag_struct_#1_prop } %
1361         {
1362             \prop_get:cnNT
1363             {g__tag_struct_#1_prop}
1364             {parentnum}
1365             \l__tag_tmpa_tl
1366             {
1367                 \msg_warning:nnn { tag } {struct-used-twice} {#1}
1368             }
1369         }
1370     }

```

add the #1 structure as kid to the current structure (can be the root)

```

1369         \__tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_right:ee
1370         { \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl }
1371         { #1 }

```

add the current structure to #1 as parent

```

1372         \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
1373         { #1 }
1374         { parentnum }
1375         {
1376             \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl

```

```

1377     }
1378 <debug>         \prop_gput:cne
1379 <debug>         { g__tag_struct_debug_#1_prop }
1380 <debug>         { parentnum }
1381 <debug>         {
1382 <debug>         \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl\c_space_tl=~
1383 <debug>         \g__tag_struct_tag_tl
1384 <debug>         }

```

check if the tag is allowed as child.

```

1385     \socket_use:nn{tag/check/parent-child}
1386     {
1387     \__tag_struct_use_check_parent_child:oo
1388     {\g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl}
1389     {#1}
1390     }
1391     }
1392     {
1393     \msg_warning:nnn{ tag }{struct-label-unknown}{#1}
1394     }
1395     }
1396   }
1397 </package | debug>

```

(End of definition for \tag_struct_use_num:n. This function is documented on page 110.)

\tag_struct_object_ref:n This is a command that allows to reference a structure. The argument is the number which can be get for the current structure with `\tag_get:n{struct_num}` TODO check if it should be in base too.

```

1398 <*package>
1399 \cs_new:Npn \tag_struct_object_ref:n #1
1400 {
1401   \pdf_object_ref_indexed:nn {__tag/struct}{ #1 }
1402 }
1403 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \tag_struct_object_ref:n {e}
1404 </package>

```

(End of definition for \tag_struct_object_ref:n. This function is documented on page 110.)

\tag_struct_gput:nnn This is a command that allows to update the data of a structure. This often can't done simply by replacing the value, as we have to preserve and extend existing content. We use therefore dedicated functions adjusted to the key in question. The first argument is the number of the structure, the second a keyword referring to a function, the third the value. Currently the existing keywords are mostly related to the `Ref` key (an array). The keyword `ref` takes as value an explicit object reference to a structure. The keyword `ref_label` expects as value a label name (from a label set in a `\tagstructbegin` command). The keyword `ref_dest` expects a destination name set with `\MakeLinkTarget`. It then will refer to the structure in which this `\MakeLinkTarget` was used. The keyword `ref_num` expects a structure number. At last there is the keyword `attribute` which allows to add or extend the `/A` key of the structure. The value is the content of one attribute dictionary, so for example `/O /Layout /BBox [10 10 50 50]`. The content is stored in an object and the object reference is than added to the `/A`.

```

1405 <base>\cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_struct_gput:nnn #1 #2 #3{}

```

```

1406 (*package)
1407 \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_struct_gput:nnn #1 #2 #3
1408 {
1409   \cs_if_exist_use:cF {__tag_struct_gput_data_#2:nn}
1410   { %warning??
1411     \use_none:nn
1412   }
1413   {#1}{#3}
1414 }
1415 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \tag_struct_gput:nnn {ene,nne}
1416 (/package)

```

(End of definition for \tag_struct_gput:nnn. This function is documented on page 111.)

__tag_struct_gput_data_ref_aux:nnn

```

1417 (*package)
1418 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_gput_data_ref_aux:nnn #1 #2 #3
1419 % #1 receiving struct num, #2 key word #3 value
1420 {
1421   \prop_get:cnNTF
1422   { g__tag_struct_#1_prop }
1423   {Ref}
1424   \l__tag_get_tmpc_tl
1425   {
1426     \tl_put_right:No \l__tag_get_tmpc_tl
1427     {\cs:w __tag_struct_Ref_#2:nN \cs_end: {#3},}
1428   }
1429   {
1430     \tl_set:No \l__tag_get_tmpc_tl
1431     {\cs:w __tag_struct_Ref_#2:nN \cs_end: {#3},}
1432   }
1433   \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nno
1434   { #1 }
1435   { Ref }
1436   { \l__tag_get_tmpc_tl }
1437 }
1438 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_gput_data_ref:nn #1 #2
1439 {
1440   \__tag_struct_gput_data_ref_aux:nnn {#1}{obj}{#2}
1441 }
1442 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_gput_data_ref_label:nn #1 #2
1443 {
1444   \__tag_struct_gput_data_ref_aux:nnn {#1}{label}{#2}
1445 }
1446 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_gput_data_ref_dest:nn #1 #2
1447 {
1448   \__tag_struct_gput_data_ref_aux:nnn {#1}{dest}{#2}
1449 }
1450 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_gput_data_ref_num:nn #1 #2
1451 {
1452   \__tag_struct_gput_data_ref_aux:nnn {#1}{num}{#2}
1453 }
1454
1455 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_struct_gput_data_ref:nn {ee,no}

```

(End of definition for `__tag_struct_gput_data_ref_aux:nnn`.)

`__tag_struct_gput_data_attribute:nn`

```
1456 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_struct_gput_data_attribute:nn #1 #2
1457 {
1458   \pdf_object_unnamed_write:nn {dict} {#2}
1459   \prop_get:cnNTF { g__tag_struct_#1_prop }{A} \l__tag_tmpa_tl
1460   {
1461     \tl_remove_once:Nn\l__tag_tmpa_tl{[]}
1462     \tl_remove_once:Nn\l__tag_tmpa_tl{]}
1463     \__tag_prop_gput:cne { g__tag_struct_#1_prop }
1464     { A }
1465     {
1466       [ \l__tag_tmpa_tl \c_space_tl \pdf_object_ref_last: ]
1467     }
1468   }
1469   {
1470     \__tag_prop_gput:cne { g__tag_struct_#1_prop }
1471     { A }
1472     { \pdf_object_ref_last: }
1473   }
1474 }
```

(End of definition for `__tag_struct_gput_data_attribute:nn`.)

`\tag_struct_insert_annot:nn` This are the user command to insert annotations. They must be used together to get the numbers right. They use a counter to the `StructParent` and `\tag_struct_insert_annot:nn` increases the counter given back by `\tag_struct_parent_int:`.

`\tag_struct_insert_annot:ee` It must be used together with `\tag_struct_parent_int:` to insert an annotation. `\tag_struct_parent_int:` `\tag_struct_parent_int:` TODO: decide how it should be guarded if tagging is deactivated.

```
1475 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_struct_insert_annot:nn #1 #2 %#1 should be an object reference
1476                                     %#2 struct parent num
1477 {
1478   \__tag_check_if_active_struct:T
1479   {
1480     \__tag_struct_insert_annot:nn {#1}{#2}
1481   }
1482 }
1483
1484 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \tag_struct_insert_annot:nn {xx,ee}
1485 \cs_new:Npn \tag_struct_parent_int: {\int_use:c { c@g__tag_parenttree_obj_int }}
1486
1487 \end{package}
1488
```

(End of definition for `\tag_struct_insert_annot:nn` and `\tag_struct_parent_int:`. These functions are documented on page 110.)

7 Attributes and attribute classes

```
1489 \begin{header}
1490 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-attr-code} {2025-06-27} {0.99s}
1491 {part of tagpdf - code related to attributes and attribute classes}
```

```
1492 </header>
```

7.1 Variables

`\g__tag_attr_entries_prop` `\g__@@_attr_entries_prop` will store attribute names and their dictionary content.
`\g__tag_attr_class_used_prop` `\g__@@_attr_class_used_prop` will hold the attributes which have been used as class name. `\l__@@_attr_value_tl` is used to build the attribute array or key. Every time an attribute is used for the first time, and object is created with its content, the name-object reference relation is stored in `\g__@@_attr_objref_prop`

```
1493 <*package>
```

```
1494 \prop_new:N \g__tag_attr_entries_prop
```

```
1495 \prop_new_linked:N \g__tag_attr_class_used_prop
```

```
1496 \tl_new:N \l__tag_attr_value_tl
```

```
1497 \prop_new:N \g__tag_attr_objref_prop %will contain obj num of used attributes
```

This seq is currently kept for compatibility with the table code.

```
1498 \seq_new:N \g__tag_attr_class_used_seq
```

(End of definition for `\g__tag_attr_entries_prop` and others.)

7.2 Commands and keys

`__tag_attr_new_entry:nn` This allows to define attributes. Defined attributes are stored in a global property. `role/new-attribute` expects two brace group, the name and the content. The content typically needs an `/O` key for the owner. An example look like this.

TODO: consider to put them directly in the ClassMap, that is perhaps more effective.

```
\__tag_attr_new_entry:nn  
  role/new-attribute (setup-key)  
newattribute (deprecated)
```

```
\tagpdfsetup
```

```
{  
  role/new-attribute =  
    {TH-col}{/O /Table /Scope /Column},  
  role/new-attribute =  
    {TH-row}{/O /Table /Scope /Row},  
}
```

```
1499 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_attr_new_entry:nn #1 #2 %#1:name, #2: content
```

```
1500 {
```

```
1501   \prop_gput:Nen \g__tag_attr_entries_prop
```

```
1502   {\pdf_name_from_unicode_e:n{#1}}{#2}
```

```
1503 }
```

```
1504
```

```
1505 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_attr_new_entry:nn {ee}
```

```
1506 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
```

```
1507 {
```

```
1508   role/new-attribute .code:n =
```

```
1509   {
```

```
1510     \__tag_attr_new_entry:nn #1
```

```
1511   }
```

deprecated name

```
1512   ,newattribute .code:n =
```

```
1513   {
```

```
1514     \__tag_attr_new_entry:nn #1
```

```
1515   },
```

```
1516 }
```

(End of definition for `_tag_attr_new_entry:nn`, `role/new-attribute` (setup-key), and `newattribute` (deprecated). These functions are documented on page 113.)

`attribute-class` (struct key) `attribute-class` has to store the used attribute names so that they can be added to the `ClassMap` later.

```

1517 \keys_define:nn { __tag / struct }
1518   {
1519     attribute-class .code:n =
1520     {
1521       \clist_set:Nc \l__tag_tmpa_clist { #1 }
1522       \seq_set_from_clist:NN \l__tag_tmpb_seq \l__tag_tmpa_clist
we convert the names into pdf names with slash
1523       \seq_set_map_e:NNn \l__tag_tmpa_seq \l__tag_tmpb_seq
1524       {
1525         \pdf_name_from_unicode_e:n {##1}
1526       }
1527       \seq_map_inline:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_seq
1528       {
1529         \prop_get:NnNF \g__tag_attr_entries_prop {##1}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
1530         {
1531           \msg_error:nnn { tag } { attr-unknown } { ##1 }
1532         }
1533         \prop_gput:Nnn\g__tag_attr_class_used_prop { ##1} {}
1534       }
1535       \tl_set:Nc \l__tag_tmpa_tl
1536       {
1537         \int_compare:nT { \seq_count:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq > 1 }{[]}
1538         \seq_use:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_seq { \c_space_tl }
1539         \int_compare:nT { \seq_count:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq > 1 }{[]}
1540       }
1541       \int_compare:nT { \seq_count:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq > 0 }
1542       {
1543         \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
1544         { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
1545         { C }
1546         { \l__tag_tmpa_tl }
1547         %\prop_show:c { g__tag_struct_\int_eval:n { \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int}_prop }
1548       }
1549     }
1550   }

```

`attribute` (struct key)

```

1551 \keys_define:nn { __tag / struct }
1552   {
1553     attribute .code:n = % A property (attribute, value currently a dictionary)
1554     {
1555       \clist_set:Nc \l__tag_tmpa_clist { #1 }
1556       \clist_if_empty:NF \l__tag_tmpa_clist
1557       {
1558         \seq_set_from_clist:NN \l__tag_tmpb_seq \l__tag_tmpa_clist
we convert the names into pdf names with slash
1559         \seq_set_map_e:NNn \l__tag_tmpa_seq \l__tag_tmpb_seq
1560         {

```

```

1561         \pdf_name_from_unicode_e:n {##1}
1562     }
1563     \tl_set:Ne \l__tag_attr_value_tl
1564     {
1565         \int_compare:nT { \seq_count:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq > 1 }{[]%}
1566     }
1567     \seq_map_inline:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_seq
1568     {
1569         \prop_get:NnNF \g__tag_attr_entries_prop {##1}\l__tag_tmp_unused_tl
1570         {
1571             \msg_error:nnn { tag } { attr-unknown } { ##1 }
1572         }
1573         \prop_get:NnNF \g__tag_attr_objref_prop {##1}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
1574         {%\prop_show:N \g__tag_attr_entries_prop
1575         \pdf_object_unnamed_write:ne
1576         { dict }
1577         {
1578             \prop_item:Nn\g__tag_attr_entries_prop {##1}
1579         }
1580         \prop_gput:Nne \g__tag_attr_objref_prop {##1} {\pdf_object_ref_last:}
1581         }
1582         \tl_put_right:Ne \l__tag_attr_value_tl
1583         {
1584             \c_space_tl
1585             \prop_item:Nn \g__tag_attr_objref_prop {##1}
1586         }
1587     % \tl_show:N \l__tag_attr_value_tl
1588     }
1589     \tl_put_right:Ne \l__tag_attr_value_tl
1590     { %[
1591         \int_compare:nT { \seq_count:N \l__tag_tmpa_seq > 1 }{[]}%
1592     }
1593     % \tl_show:N \l__tag_attr_value_tl
1594     \__tag_struct_prop_gput:nne
1595     { \int_use:N \c@g__tag_struct_abs_int }
1596     { A }
1597     { \l__tag_attr_value_tl }
1598 }
1599 },
1600 }
1601 </package>

```


Part IX

The tagpdf-luatex.def Driver for luatex Part of the tagpdf package

```
1 <@@=tag>
2 <*luatex>
3 \ProvidesExplFile {tagpdf-luatex.def} {2025-06-27} {0.99s}
4   {tagpdf-driver-for-luatex}
```

1 Loading the lua

The space code requires that the fall back font has been loaded and initialized, so we force that first. But perhaps this could be done in the kernel.

```
5 {
6   \fontencoding{TU}\fontfamily{lmr}\fontseries{m}\fontshape{n}\fontsize{10pt}{10pt}\selectfont
7 }
8 \lua_now:e { tagpdf=require('tagpdf.lua') }
```

The following defines wrappers around prop and seq commands to store the data also in lua tables. I probably want also lua tables I put them in the ltx.@@.tables namespaces. The tables will be named like the variables but without backslash. To access such a table with a dynamical name create a string and then use ltx.@@.tables[string]. Old code, I'm not quite sure if this was a good idea. Now I have mix of table in ltx.@@.tables and ltx.@@.mc/struct. And a lot is probably not needed. TODO: this should be cleaned up, but at least roles are currently using the table!

```

  \__tag_prop_new:N
  \__tag_seq_new:N
  \__tag_prop_gput:Nnn
  \__tag_seq_gput_right:Nn
  \__tag_seq_gput_left:Nn
  \__tag_seq_item:cn
  \__tag_prop_item:cn
  \__tag_seq_show:N
  \__tag_prop_show:N
9 \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_prop_new:N #1
10 {
11   \prop_new:N #1
12   \lua_now:e { ltx.__tag.tables['\cs_to_str:N#1'] = {} }
13 }
14
15 \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_prop_new_linked:N #1
16 {
17   \prop_new_linked:N #1
18   \lua_now:e { ltx.__tag.tables['\cs_to_str:N#1'] = {} }
19 }
20
21
22 \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_seq_new:N #1
23 {
24   \seq_new:N #1
25   \lua_now:e { ltx.__tag.tables['\cs_to_str:N#1'] = {} }
26 }
27
28
29 \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_prop_gput:Nnn #1 #2 #3
```

```

30 {
31   \prop_gput:Nnn #1 { #2 } { #3 }
32   \lua_now:e { ltx.__tag.tables['\cs_to_str:N#1'] ["#2"] = "\lua_escape:n{#3}" }
33 }
34
35 \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_seq_gput_right:Nn #1 #2
36 {
37   \seq_gput_right:Nn #1 { #2 }
38   \lua_now:e { table.insert(ltx.__tag.tables['\cs_to_str:N#1'], "#2") }
39 }

```

this inserts on the right of the lua table, but as the lua table is not used for kids this is ignored for now.

```

40 \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_seq_gput_left:Nn #1 #2
41 {
42   \seq_gput_left:Nn #1 { #2 }
43   \lua_now:e { table.insert(ltx.__tag.tables['\cs_to_str:N#1'], "#2") }
44 }
45
46 %Hm not quite sure about the naming
47 \cs_set:Npn \__tag_seq_item:cn #1 #2
48 {
49   \lua_now:e { tex.sprint(\int_use:N\c_document_cctab,ltx.__tag.tables['#1']["#2"]) }
50 }
51
52 \cs_set:Npn \__tag_prop_item:cn #1 #2
53 {
54   \lua_now:e { tex.sprint(\int_use:N\c_document_cctab,ltx.__tag.tables['#1']["#2"]) }
55 }
56
57 %for debugging commands that show both the seq/prop and the lua tables
58 \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_seq_show:N #1
59 {
60   \seq_show:N #1
61   \lua_now:e { ltx.__tag.trace.log ("lua~sequence~array~\cs_to_str:N#1",1) }
62   \lua_now:e { ltx.__tag.trace.show_seq (ltx.__tag.tables['\cs_to_str:N#1']) }
63 }
64
65 \cs_set_protected:Npn \__tag_prop_show:N #1
66 {
67   \prop_show:N #1
68   \lua_now:e {ltx.__tag.trace.log ("lua~property~table~\cs_to_str:N#1",1) }
69   \lua_now:e {ltx.__tag.trace.show_prop (ltx.__tag.tables['\cs_to_str:N#1']) }
70 }

```

(End of definition for __tag_prop_new:N and others.)

```

71 </luatex>

```

The module declaration

```

72 <*lua>
73 -- tagpdf.lua
74 -- Ulrike Fischer
75
76 local ProvidesLuaModule = {
77   name          = "tagpdf",

```

```

78     version      = "0.99s",          --TAGVERSION
79     date         = "2025-06-27", --TAGDATE
80     description  = "tagpdf lua code",
81     license      = "The LATEX Project Public License 1.3c"
82 }
83
84 if luatexbase and luatexbase.provides_module then
85     luatexbase.provides_module (ProvidesLuaModule)
86 end
87
88 --[[
89 The code has quite probably a number of problems
90 - more variables should be local instead of global
91 - the naming is not always consistent due to the development of the code
92 - the traversing of the shipout box must be tested with more complicated setups
93 - it should probably handle more node types
94 -
95 --]]
96

```

Some comments about the lua structure.

```

97 --[[
98 the main table is named ltx.__tag. It contains the functions and also the data
99 collected during the compilation.
100
101 ltx.__tag.mc      will contain mc connected data.
102 ltx.__tag.role   will contain data related to parent-child relations.
103 ltx.__tag.struct will contain structure related data.
104 ltx.__tag.page   will contain page data
105 ltx.__tag.tables contains also data from mc and struct (from older code). This needs cleaning
106                 There are certainly dublettes, but I don't dare yet ...
107 ltx.__tag.func   will contain (public) functions.
108 ltx.__tag.trace  will contain tracing/logging functions.
109 local functions starts with __
110 functions meant for users will be in ltx.tag
111
112 functions
113 ltx.__tag.func.get_num_from (tag):   takes a tag (string) and returns the id number
114 ltx.__tag.func.output_num_from (tag): takes a tag (string) and prints (to tex) the id number
115 ltx.__tag.func.get_tag_from (num):   takes a num and returns the tag
116 ltx.__tag.func.output_tag_from (num): takes a num and prints (to tex) the tag
117 ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data (num,key,data): stores key=data in ltx.__tag.mc[num]
118 ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_label (label,num): stores label=num in ltx.__tag.mc.labels
119 ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_kid (mcnum,kid,page): stores the mc-kids of mcnum on page page
120 ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_in_page(mcnum,mcpagecnt,page): stores in the page table the number of
121 ltx.__tag.func.store_struct_mcabs (structnum,mcnum): stores relations structnum<->mcnum (abs
122 ltx.__tag.func.mc_insert_kids (mcnum): inserts the /K entries for mcnum by wandering through
123 ltx.__tag.func.mark_page_elements(box,mcpagecnt,mccntprev,mcopen,name,mctypeprev) : the main
124 ltx.__tag.func.mark_shipout (): a wrapper around the core function which inserts the last EN
125 ltx.__tag.func.fill_parent_tree_line (page): outputs the entries of the parenttree for this
126 ltx.__tag.func.output_parenttree(): outputs the content of the parenttree
127 ltx.__tag.func.pdf_object_ref(name,index): outputs the object reference for the object name
128 ltx.__tag.func.markspaceon(), ltx.__tag.func.markspaceoff(): (de)activates the marking of po
129 ltx.__tag.trace.show_mc_data (num,loglevel): shows ltx.__tag.mc[num] is the current log leve
130 ltx.__tag.trace.show_all_mc_data (max,loglevel): shows a maximum about mc's if the current l

```

```

131 ltx.__tag.trace.show_seq: shows a sequence (array)
132 ltx.__tag.trace.show_struct_data (num): shows data of structure num
133 ltx.__tag.trace.show_prop: shows a prop
134 ltx.__tag.trace.log
135 ltx.__tag.trace.showspace : boolean
136
137 ltx.tag.get_structnum: number, shows the current structure number
138 ltx.tag.get_structnum_next: number, shows the next structure number
139 --]]
140

```

This set-ups the main attribute registers. The `mc_type` attribute stores the type (P, Span etc) encoded as a num, The `mc_cnt` attribute stores the absolute number and allows so to see if a node belongs to the same mc-chunk. The `structnum` attribute stores the structure number. The `interwordspace attr` is set by the function `@@_mark_spaces`, and marks the place where spaces should be inserted. The `interwordfont attr` is set by the function `@@_mark_spaces` too and stores the font, so that we can decide which font to use for the real space char. The `interwordspaceOff attr` allows to locally suppress the insertion of real space chars, e.g. when they are inserted by other means (e.g. with `\char`).

```

141 local mctypeattributeid = luatexbase.new_attribute ("g__tag_mc_type_attr")
142 local mcntattributeid   = luatexbase.new_attribute ("g__tag_mc_cnt_attr")
143 local structnumattributeid = luatexbase.new_attribute ("g__tag_structnum_attr")
144 local iwspaceOffattributeid = luatexbase.new_attribute ("g__tag_interwordspaceOff_attr")
145 local iwspaceattributeid = luatexbase.new_attribute ("g__tag_interwordspace_attr")
146 local iwfontattributeid = luatexbase.new_attribute ("g__tag_interwordfont_attr")

```

with this token we can query the state of the boolean and so detect if unmarked nodes should be marked as attributes

```

147 local tagunmarkedbool= token.create("g__tag_tagunmarked_bool")
148 local truebool       = token.create("c_true_bool")

```

with this token we can query the state of the softhyphen boolean and so detect if hyphens from hyphenation should be replaced by soft-hyphens.

```

149 local softhyphenbool = token.create("g__tag_softhyphen_bool")

```

Now a number of local versions from global tables. Not all is perhaps needed, most node variants were copied from lua-debug.

```

150 local catlatex      = luatexbase.registernumber("catcodetable@latex")
151 local tableinsert   = table.insert
152 local nodeid        = node.id
153 local nodecopy      = node.copy
154 local nodegetattribute = node.get_attribute
155 local nodesetattribute = node.set_attribute
156 local nodehasattribute = node.has_attribute
157 local nodenew       = node.new
158 local nodetail      = node.tail
159 local nodeslide     = node.slide
160 local noderemove    = node.remove
161 local nodetraverseid = node.traverse_id
162 local nodetraverse   = node.traverse
163 local nodeinsertafter = node.insert_after
164 local nodeinsertbefore = node.insert_before
165 local pdfpageref    = pdf.pageref
166

```

```

167 local fonthashes      = fonts.hashes
168 local identifiers     = fonthashes.identifiers
169 local fontid          = font.id
170
171 local HLIST           = node.id("hlist")
172 local VLIST           = node.id("vlist")
173 local RULE            = node.id("rule")
174 local DISC            = node.id("disc")
175 local GLUE            = node.id("glue")
176 local GLYPH           = node.id("glyph")
177 local KERN            = node.id("kern")
178 local PENALTY         = node.id("penalty")
179 local LOCAL_PAR       = node.id("local_par")
180 local MATH            = node.id("math")
181
182 local NEXT = next
183 local explicit_disc = 1
184 local regular_disc = 3

```

Now we setup the main table structure. ltx is used by other latex code too!

```

185 ltx          = ltx          or { }
186 ltx.tag      = ltx.tag      or { } -- user commands
187 ltx.__tag    = ltx.__tag    or { }
188 ltx.__tag.mc = ltx.__tag.mc or { } -- mc data
189 ltx.__tag.role = ltx.__tag.role or { } -- parent-child data
190 ltx.__tag.role.states = ltx.__tag.role.states or { } -- the states
191 ltx.__tag.role.index = ltx.__tag.role.index or { } -- standard types to index
192                                     --- numbers
193 ltx.__tag.role.matrix = ltx.__tag.role.matrix or { } -- implements the matrix
194 ltx.__tag.struct = ltx.__tag.struct or { } -- struct data
195 ltx.__tag.tables = ltx.__tag.tables or { } -- tables created with new prop and new seq.
196                                     -- wasn't a so great idea ...
197                                     -- g__tag_role_tags_seq used by tag<-> is in this tab
198                                     -- used for pure lua tables too now!
199 ltx.__tag.page = ltx.__tag.page or { } -- page data, currently only i->{0->mcnum,1->mc
200 ltx.__tag.trace = ltx.__tag.trace or { } -- show commands
201 ltx.__tag.func = ltx.__tag.func or { } -- functions
202 ltx.__tag.conf = ltx.__tag.conf or { } -- configuration variables

```

2 User commands to access data

Code like the one in luamml will have to access the current state in some places.

```

203 local __tag_get_struct_num =
204   function()
205     local a = token.get_macro("g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl")
206     return a
207   end
208
209 local __tag_get_struct_counter =
210   function()
211     local a = tex.getcount("c@g__tag_struct_abs_int")

```

```

212   return a
213 end
214
215 local __tag_get_struct_num_next =
216 function()
217   local a = tex.getcount("c@g__tag_struct_abs_int") + 1
218   return a
219 end
220
221 ltx.tag.get_struct_num = __tag_get_struct_num
222 ltx.tag.get_struct_counter = __tag_get_struct_counter
223 ltx.tag.get_struct_num_next = __tag_get_struct_num_next

```

(End of definition for \. This function is documented on page ??.)

3 Logging functions

`__tag_log` This rather simple log function takes as argument a message (string) and a number and will output the message to the log/terminal if the current loglevel is greater or equal than `num`.

```

224 local __tag_log =
225 function (message,loglevel)
226   if (loglevel or 3) <= tex.count["l__tag_loglevel_int"] then
227     texio.write_nl("tagpdf: ".. message)
228   end
229 end
230
231 ltx.__tag.trace.log = __tag_log

```

(End of definition for `__tag_log` and `ltx.__tag.trace.log`.)

`ltx.__tag.trace.show_seq` This shows the content of a seq as stored in the tables table. It is used by the `\@@_seq_show:N` function. It is not used in user commands, only for debugging, and so requires log level >0.

```

232 function ltx.__tag.trace.show_seq (seq)
233   if (type(seq) == "table") then
234     for i,v in ipairs(seq) do
235       __tag_log ("[" .. i .. "] => " .. tostring(v),1)
236     end
237   else
238     __tag_log ("sequence " .. tostring(seq) .. " not found",1)
239   end
240 end

```

(End of definition for `ltx.__tag.trace.show_seq`.)

`__tag_pairs_prop` This shows the content of a prop as stored in the tables table. It is used by the `\@@_prop_show:N` function.

```

241 local __tag_pairs_prop =
242 function (prop)
243   local a = {}
244   for n in pairs(prop) do tableinsert(a, n) end
245   table.sort(a)

```

```

246     local i = 0                -- iterator variable
247     local iter = function ()  -- iterator function
248         i = i + 1
249         if a[i] == nil then return nil
250         else return a[i], prop[a[i]]
251         end
252     end
253     return iter
254 end
255
256
257 function ltx.__tag.trace.show_prop (prop)
258     if (type(prop) == "table") then
259         for i,v in __tag_pairs_prop (prop) do
260             __tag_log ("[" .. i .. "] => " .. tostring(v),1)
261         end
262     else
263         __tag_log ("prop " .. tostring(prop) .. " not found or not a table",1)
264     end
265 end

```

(End of definition for __tag_pairs_prop and ltx.__tag.trace.show_prop.)

ltx.__tag.trace.show_mc_data This shows some data for a mc given by num. If something is shown depends on the log level. The function is used by the following function and then in \ShowTagging

```

266 function ltx.__tag.trace.show_mc_data (num,loglevel)
267     if ltx.__tag and ltx.__tag.mc and ltx.__tag.mc[num] then
268         for k,v in pairs(ltx.__tag.mc[num]) do
269             __tag_log ("mc"..num..": "..tostring(k).."=>"..tostring(v),loglevel)
270         end
271         if ltx.__tag.mc[num]["kids"] then
272             __tag_log ("mc" .. num .. " has " .. #ltx.__tag.mc[num]["kids"] .. " kids",loglevel)
273             for k,v in ipairs(ltx.__tag.mc[num]["kids"]) do
274                 __tag_log ("mc " .. num .. " kid "..k.." =>" .. v.kid.." on page " ..v.page,loglevel)
275             end
276         end
277     else
278         __tag_log ("mc"..num.." not found",loglevel)
279     end
280 end

```

(End of definition for ltx.__tag.trace.show_mc_data.)

ltx.__tag.trace.show_all_mc_data This shows data for the mc's between min and max (numbers). It is used by the \ShowTagging function.

```

281 function ltx.__tag.trace.show_all_mc_data (min,max,loglevel)
282     for i = min, max do
283         ltx.__tag.trace.show_mc_data (i,loglevel)
284     end
285     texio.write_nl("")
286 end

```

(End of definition for ltx.__tag.trace.show_all_mc_data.)

ltx.__tag.trace.show_struct_data This function shows some struct data. Unused but kept for debugging.

```
287 function ltx.__tag.trace.show_struct_data (num)
288   if ltx.__tag and ltx.__tag.struct and ltx.__tag.struct[num] then
289     for k,v in ipairs(ltx.__tag.struct[num]) do
290       __tag_log ("struct "..num..": "..tostring(k).."=>"..tostring(v),1)
291     end
292   else
293     __tag_log ("struct "..num.." not found ",1)
294   end
295 end
```

(End of definition for ltx.__tag.trace.show_struct_data.)

4 Helper functions

4.1 Retrieve data functions

__tag_get_mc_cnt_type_tag This takes a node as argument and returns the mc-cnt, the mc-type and and the tag (calculated from the mc-cnt).

```
296 local __tag_get_mc_cnt_type_tag = function (n)
297   local mccnt      = nodegetattribute(n,mccntattributeid) or -1
298   local mctype     = nodegetattribute(n,mctypeattributeid) or -1
299   local tag        = ltx.__tag.func.get_tag_from(mctype)
300   return mccnt,mctype,tag
301 end
```

(End of definition for __tag_get_mc_cnt_type_tag.)

__tag_get_mathsubtype This function allows to detect if we are at the begin or the end of math. It takes as argument a mathnode.

```
302 local function __tag_get_mathsubtype (mathnode)
303   if mathnode.subtype == 0 then
304     subtype = "beginmath"
305   else
306     subtype = "endmath"
307   end
308   return subtype
309 end
```

(End of definition for __tag_get_mathsubtype.)

ltx.__tag.tables.role_tag_attribute The first is a table with key a tag and value a number (the attribute) The second is an array with the attribute value as key.

```
310 ltx.__tag.tables.role_tag_attribute = {}
311 ltx.__tag.tables.role_attribute_tag = {}
```

(End of definition for ltx.__tag.tables.role_tag_attribute.)

ltx.__tag.func.alloctag

```
312 local __tag_alloctag =
313   function (tag)
314     if not ltx.__tag.tables.role_tag_attribute[tag] then
315       table.insert(ltx.__tag.tables.role_attribute_tag,tag)
```



```

316     ltx.__tag.tables.role_tag_attribute[tag]=#ltx.__tag.tables.role_attribute_tag
317     __tag_log ("Add "..tag.." "..ltx.__tag.tables.role_tag_attribute[tag],3)
318     end
319 end
320 ltx.__tag.func.alloctag = __tag_alloctag

```

(End of definition for ltx.__tag.func.alloctag.)

These functions take as argument a string `tag`, and return the number under which is it recorded (and so the attribute value). The first function outputs the number for lua, while the `output` function outputs to tex.

```

__tag_get_num_from
ltx.__tag.func.get_num_from
ltx.__tag.func.output_num_from

```

```

321 local __tag_get_num_from =
322 function (tag)
323     if ltx.__tag.tables.role_tag_attribute[tag] then
324         a= ltx.__tag.tables.role_tag_attribute[tag]
325     else
326         a= -1
327     end
328     return a
329 end
330
331 ltx.__tag.func.get_num_from = __tag_get_num_from
332
333 function ltx.__tag.func.output_num_from (tag)
334     local num = __tag_get_num_from (tag)
335     tex.sprint(catlatex,num)
336     if num == -1 then
337         __tag_log ("Unknown tag "..tag.." used")
338     end
339 end

```

(End of definition for __tag_get_num_from, ltx.__tag.func.get_num_from, and ltx.__tag.func.output_num_from.)

These functions are the opposites to the previous function: they take as argument a number (the attribute value) and return the string `tag`. The first function outputs the string for lua, while the `output` function outputs to tex.

```

__tag_get_tag_from
ltx.__tag.func.get_tag_from
ltx.__tag.func.output_tag_from

```

```

340 local __tag_get_tag_from =
341 function (num)
342     if ltx.__tag.tables.role_attribute_tag[num] then
343         a = ltx.__tag.tables.role_attribute_tag[num]
344     else
345         a= "UNKNOWN"
346     end
347     return a
348 end
349
350 ltx.__tag.func.get_tag_from = __tag_get_tag_from
351
352 function ltx.__tag.func.output_tag_from (num)
353     tex.sprint(catlatex,__tag_get_tag_from (num))
354 end

```

(End of definition for __tag_get_tag_from, ltx.__tag.func.get_tag_from, and ltx.__tag.func.output_tag_from.)

ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data This function stores for key=data for mc-chunk num. It is used in the tagpdf-mc code, to store for example the tag string, and the raw options.

```
355 function ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data (num,key,data)
356   ltx.__tag.mc[num] = ltx.__tag.mc[num] or { }
357   ltx.__tag.mc[num][key] = data
358   __tag_log ("INFO TEX-STORE-MC-DATA: "..num.." => "..tostring(key).. " => "..tostring(data),3)
359 end
```

(End of definition for ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data.)

ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_label This function stores the label=num relationship in the labels subtable. TODO: this is probably unused and can go.

```
360 function ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_label (label,num)
361   ltx.__tag.mc["labels"] = ltx.__tag.mc["labels"] or { }
362   ltx.__tag.mc.labels[label] = num
363 end
```

(End of definition for ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_label.)

ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_kid This function is used in the traversing code. It stores a sub-chunk of a mc mcnum into the kids table.

```
364 function ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_kid (mcnum,kid,page)
365   __tag_log("INFO TAG-STORE-MC-KID: "..mcnum.." => " .. kid.." on page " .. page,3)
366   ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"] = ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"] or { }
367   local kidtable = {kid=kid,page=page}
368   tableinsert(ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"], kidtable )
369 end
```

(End of definition for ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_kid.)

ltx.__tag.func.mc_num_of_kids This function returns the number of kids a mc mcnum has. We need to account for the case that a mc can have no kids.

```
370 function ltx.__tag.func.mc_num_of_kids (mcnum)
371   local num = 0
372   if ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum] and ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"] then
373     num = #ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"]
374   end
375   __tag_log ("INFO MC-KID-NUMBERS: " .. mcnum .. "has " .. num .. "KIDS",4)
376   return num
377 end
```

(End of definition for ltx.__tag.func.mc_num_of_kids.)

4.2 Functions to insert the pdf literals

__tag_backend_create_emc_node This insert the emc node. We support also dvips and dvipdfmx backend
__tag_insert_emc_node

```
378 local __tag_backend_create_emc_node
379 if tex.outputmode == 0 then
380   if token.get_macro("c_sys_backend_str") == "dvipdfmx" then
381     function __tag_backend_create_emc_node ()
382       local emcnode = nodenew("whatsit","special")
383       emcnode.data = "pdf:code EMC"
384       return emcnode
385     end
```

```

386 else -- assume a dvips variant
387   function __tag_backend_create_emc_node ()
388     local emcnode = nodenew("whatsit","special")
389     emcnode.data = "ps:SDict begin mark /EMC pdfmark end"
390     return emcnode
391   end
392 end
393 else -- pdf mode
394   function __tag_backend_create_emc_node ()
395     local emcnode = nodenew("whatsit","pdf_literal")
396     emcnode.data = "EMC"
397     emcnode.mode=1
398     return emcnode
399   end
400 end
401
402 local function __tag_insert_emc_node (head,current)
403   local emcnode= __tag_backend_create_emc_node()
404   head = node.insert_before(head,current,emcnode)
405   return head
406 end

```

(End of definition for __tag_backend_create_emc_node and __tag_insert_emc_node.)

__tag_backend_create_bmc_node
__tag_insert_bmc_node

This inserts a simple bmc node

```

407 local __tag_backend_create_bmc_node
408 if tex.outputmode == 0 then
409   if token.get_macro("c_sys_backend_str") == "dviptdpmx" then
410     function __tag_backend_create_bmc_node (tag)
411       local bmcnode = nodenew("whatsit","special")
412       bmcnode.data = "pdf:code /"..tag.." BMC"
413       return bmcnode
414     end
415   else -- assume a dvips variant
416     function __tag_backend_create_bmc_node (tag)
417       local bmcnode = nodenew("whatsit","special")
418       bmcnode.data = "ps:SDict begin mark/"..tag.." /BMC pdfmark end"
419       return bmcnode
420     end
421   end
422 else -- pdf mode
423   function __tag_backend_create_bmc_node (tag)
424     local bmcnode = nodenew("whatsit","pdf_literal")
425     bmcnode.data = "/"..tag.." BMC"
426     bmcnode.mode=1
427     return bmcnode
428   end
429 end
430
431 local function __tag_insert_bmc_node (head,current,tag)
432   local bmcnode = __tag_backend_create_bmc_node (tag)
433   head = node.insert_before(head,current,bmcnode)
434   return head
435 end

```

(End of definition for `__tag_backend_create_bmc_node` and `__tag_insert_bmc_node`.)

`__tag_backend_create_bdc_node` This inserts a bcd node with a fix dict. TODO: check if this is still used, now that we
`__tag_insert_bdc_node` create properties.

```
436 local __tag_backend_create_bdc_node
437
438 if tex.outputmode == 0 then
439   if token.get_macro("c_sys_backend_str") == "dviptfm" then
440     function __tag_backend_create_bdc_node (tag,dict)
441       local bdcnode = nodenew("whatsit","special")
442       bdcnode.data = "pdf:code /"..tag.."<<..dict..>> BDC"
443       return bdcnode
444     end
445   else -- assume a dvips variant
446     function __tag_backend_create_bdc_node (tag,dict)
447       local bdcnode = nodenew("whatsit","special")
448       bdcnode.data = "ps:SDict begin mark/"..tag.."<<..dict..>> /BDC pdfmark end"
449       return bdcnode
450     end
451   end
452 else -- pdf mode
453   function __tag_backend_create_bdc_node (tag,dict)
454     local bdcnode = nodenew("whatsit","pdf_literal")
455     bdcnode.data = "/"..tag.."<<..dict..>> BDC"
456     bdcnode.mode=1
457     return bdcnode
458   end
459 end
460
461 local function __tag_insert_bdc_node (head,current,tag,dict)
462   bdcnode= __tag_backend_create_bdc_node (tag,dict)
463   head = node.insert_before(head,current,bdcnode)
464   return head
465 end
```

(End of definition for `__tag_backend_create_bdc_node` and `__tag_insert_bdc_node`.)

`__tag_pdf_object_ref` This allows to reference a pdf object reserved with the `l3pdf` command by name. The return value is `n 0 R`, if the object doesn't exist, `n` is 0.

```
466 local function __tag_pdf_object_ref (name,index)
467   local object
468   if ltx.pdf.object_id then
469     object = ltx.pdf.object_id (name,index) ..' 0 R'
470   else
471     local tokename = 'c_pdf_object_'..name..'/'..index..'_int'
472     object = token.create(tokename).mode ..' 0 R'
473   end
474   return object
475 end
476 ltx.__tag.func.pdf_object_ref = __tag_pdf_object_ref
```

(End of definition for `__tag_pdf_object_ref`.)

5 Function for the real space chars

`__tag_show_spacemark` A debugging function, it is used to inserts red color markers in the places where space chars can go, it can have side effects so not always reliable, but ok.

```
477 local function __tag_show_spacemark (head,current,color,height)
478   local markcolor = color or "1 0 0"
479   local markheight = height or 10
480   local pdfstring
481   if tex.outputmode == 0 then
482     -- ignore dvi mode for now
483   else
484     pdfstring = node.new("whatsit","pdf_literal")
485     pdfstring.data =
486       string.format("q "..markcolor.." RG "..markcolor.." rg 0.4 w 0 %g m 0 %g l S Q",-
487         3,markheight)
488     head = node.insert_after(head,current,pdfstring)
489   return head
490 end
```

(End of definition for `__tag_show_spacemark`.)

`__tag_fakespace` This is used to define a lua version of `\pdfspace`
`ltx.__tag.func.fakespace`

```
491 local function __tag_fakespace()
492   tex.setattribute(iwspaceattributeid,1)
493   tex.setattribute(iwfontattributeid,font.current())
494 end
495 ltx.__tag.func.fakespace = __tag_fakespace
```

(End of definition for `__tag_fakespace` and `ltx.__tag.func.fakespace`.)

`__tag_mark_spaces` a function to mark up places where real space chars should be inserted. It only sets attributes, these are then be used in a later traversing which inserts the actual spaces. When space handling is activated this function is inserted in some callbacks.

```
496 --[[ a function to mark up places where real space chars should be inserted
497   it only sets an attribute.
498 --]]
499
500 local function __tag_mark_spaces (head)
501   local inside_math = false
502   for n in nodetraverse(head) do
503     local id = n.id
504     if id == GLYPH then
505       local glyph = n
506       default_currfontid = glyph.font
507       if glyph.next and (glyph.next.id == GLUE)
508         and not inside_math and (glyph.next.width >0)
509       then
510         nodesetattribute(glyph.next,iwspaceattributeid,1)
511         nodesetattribute(glyph.next,iwfontattributeid,glyph.font)
512       -- for debugging
513       if ltx.__tag.trace.showspace then
514         __tag_show_spacemark (head,glyph)
515       end
```

```

516 elseif glyph.next and (glyph.next.id==KERN) and not inside_math then
517 local kern = glyph.next
518 if kern.next and (kern.next.id== GLUE) and (kern.next.width >0)
519 then
520 nodesetattribute(kern.next,iwspaceattributeid,1)
521 nodesetattribute(kern.next,iwfontattributeid,glyph.font)
522 end
523 end
524 -- look also back
525 if glyph.prev and (glyph.prev.id == GLUE)
526 and not inside_math
527 and (glyph.prev.width >0)
528 and not nodehasattribute(glyph.prev,iwspaceattributeid)
529 then
530 nodesetattribute(glyph.prev,iwspaceattributeid,1)
531 nodesetattribute(glyph.prev,iwfontattributeid,glyph.font)
532 -- for debugging
533 if ltx.__tag.trace.showspace then
534 __tag_show_spacemark (head,glyph)
535 end
536 end
537 elseif id == PENALTY then
538 local glyph = n
539 -- __tag_log ("PENALTY " .. n.subtype .. "VALUE" .. n.penalty,3)
540 if glyph.next and (glyph.next.id == GLUE)
541 and not inside_math and (glyph.next.width >0) and n.subtype==0
542 then
543 nodesetattribute(glyph.next,iwspaceattributeid,1)
544 -- changed 2024-01-18, issue #72
545 nodesetattribute(glyph.next,iwfontattributeid,default_currfontid)
546 -- for debugging
547 if ltx.__tag.trace.showspace then
548 __tag_show_spacemark (head,glyph)
549 end
550 end
551 elseif id == MATH then
552 inside_math = (n.subtype == 0)
553 end
554 end
555 return head
556 end

```

(End of definition for __tag_mark_spaces.)

```

__tag_activate_mark_space
ltx.__tag.func.markspaceon
ltx.__tag.func.markspaceoff

```

These functions add/remove the function which marks the spaces to the callbacks `pre_linebreak_filter` and `hpack_filter`

```

557 local function __tag_activate_mark_space ()
558 if not luatexbase.in_callback ("pre_linebreak_filter","markspaces") then
559 luatexbase.add_to_callback("pre_linebreak_filter",__tag_mark_spaces,"markspaces")
560 luatexbase.add_to_callback("hpack_filter",__tag_mark_spaces,"markspaces")
561 end
562 end
563
564 ltx.__tag.func.markspaceon=__tag_activate_mark_space

```

```

565
566 local function __tag_deactivate_mark_space ()
567   if luatexbase.in_callback ("pre_linebreak_filter","markspaces") then
568     luatexbase.remove_from_callback("pre_linebreak_filter","markspaces")
569     luatexbase.remove_from_callback("hpack_filter","markspaces")
570   end
571 end
572
573 ltx.__tag.func.markspaceoff=__tag_deactivate_mark_space

```

(End of definition for __tag_activate_mark_space, ltx.__tag.func.markspaceon, and ltx.__tag.func.markspaceoff.)

We need two local variable to setup a default space char.

```

574 local default_space_char = nodenew(GLYPH)
575 local default_fontid      = fontid("TU/lmr/m/n/10")
576 local default_currfontid = fontid("TU/lmr/m/n/10")
577 default_space_char.char   = 32
578 default_space_char.font   = default_fontid

```

And a function to check as best as possible if a font has a space:

```

579 local function __tag_font_has_space (fontid)
580   t= fonts.hashes.identifiers[fontid]
581   if luaotfload.aux.slot_of_name(fontid,"space")
582     or t.characters and t.characters[32] and t.characters[32]["unicode"]==32
583   then
584     return true
585   else
586     return false
587   end
588 end

```

```

__tag_space_chars_shipout
ltx.__tag.func.space_chars_shipout

```

These is the main function to insert real space chars. It inserts a glyph before every glue which has been marked previously. The attributes are copied from the glue, so if the tagging is done later, it will be tagged like it.

```

589 local function __tag_space_chars_shipout (box)
590   local head = box.head
591   if head then
592     for n in node.traverse(head) do
593       local spaceattr = -1
594       if not nodehasattribute(n,iwspaceoffattributeid) then
595         spaceattr = nodegetattribute(n,iwspaceattributeid) or -1
596       end
597       if n.id == HLIST then -- enter the hlist
598         __tag_space_chars_shipout (n)
599       elseif n.id == VLIST then -- enter the vlist
600         __tag_space_chars_shipout (n)
601       elseif n.id == GLUE then
602         if ltx.__tag.trace.showspaces and spaceattr==1 then
603           __tag_show_spacemark (head,n,"0 1 0")
604         end
605         if spaceattr==1 then
606           local space
607           local space_char = node.copy(default_space_char)
608           local curfont     = nodegetattribute(n,iwfontattributeid)
609           __tag_log ("INFO SPACE-FUNCTION-FONT: ".. tostring(curfont),3)

```

```

610         if curfont and
611             -- luaotfload.aux.slot_of_name(curfont,"space")
612             __tag_font_has_space (curfont)
613         then
614             space_char.font=curfont
615         end
616         head, space = node.insert_before(head, n, space_char) --
617         n.width      = n.width - space.width
618         space.attr   = n.attr
619     end
620 end
621 end
622 box.head = head
623 end
624 end
625
626 function ltx.__tag.func.space_chars_shipout (box)
627     __tag_space_chars_shipout (box)
628 end

```

(End of definition for `__tag_space_chars_shipout` and `ltx.__tag.func.space_chars_shipout`.)

6 Function for the tagging

`ltx.__tag.func.mc_insert_kids`

This is the main function to insert the K entry into a StructElem object. It is used in `tagpdf-mc-luacode` module. The `single` attribute allows to handle the case that a single mc on the tex side can have more than one kid after the processing here, and so we get the correct array/non array setup.

```

629 function ltx.__tag.func.mc_insert_kids (mcnum,single)
630     if ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum] then
631         __tag_log("INFO TEX-MC-INSERT-KID-TEST: " .. mcnum,4)
632         if ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"] then
633             if #ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"] > 1 and single==1 then
634                 tex.sprint(catlatex,"")
635             end
636             for i,kidstable in ipairs( ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"] ) do
637                 local kidnum = kidstable["kid"]
638                 local kidpage = kidstable["page"]
639                 local kidpageobjnum = pdfpageref(kidpage)
640                 __tag_log("INFO TEX-MC-INSERT-KID: " .. mcnum ..
641                     " insert KID " .. i ..
642                     " with num " .. kidnum ..
643                     " on page " .. kidpage.."/"..kidpageobjnum,3)
644                 tex.sprint(catlatex,"<</Type /MCR /Pg " .. kidpageobjnum .. " 0 R /MCID " .. kidnum .. ">> ")
645             end
646             if #ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["kids"] > 1 and single==1 then
647                 tex.sprint(catlatex,"")
648             end
649         else
650             -- this is typically not a problem, e.g. empty hbox in footer/header can
651             -- trigger this warning.
652             __tag_log("WARN TEX-MC-INSERT-NO-KIDS: " .. mcnum .. " has no kids",2)
653             if single==1 then

```



```

654     tex.sprint(catlatex,"null")
655   end
656 end
657 else
658   __tag_log("WARN TEX-MC-INSERT-MISSING: "..mcnum.." doesn't exist",0)
659 end
660 end

```

(End of definition for ltx.__tag.func.mc_insert_kids.)

ltx.__tag.func.store_struct_mcabs

This function is used in the tagpdf-mc-luacode. It store the absolute count of the mc into the current structure. This must be done ordered.

```

661 function ltx.__tag.func.store_struct_mcabs (structnum,mcnum)
662   ltx.__tag.struct[structnum]=ltx.__tag.struct[structnum] or { }
663   ltx.__tag.struct[structnum]["mc"]=ltx.__tag.struct[structnum]["mc"] or { }
664   -- a structure can contain more than on mc chunk, the content should be ordered
665   tableinsert(ltx.__tag.struct[structnum]["mc"],mcnum)
666   __tag_log("INFO TEX-MC-INTO-STRUCT: "..
667             mcnum.." inserted in struct "..structnum,3)
668   -- but every mc can only be in one structure
669   ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]= ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum] or { }
670   ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["parent"] = structnum
671 end
672

```

(End of definition for ltx.__tag.func.store_struct_mcabs.)

ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_in_page

This is used in the traversing code and stores the relation between abs count and page count.

```

673 -- pay attention: lua counts arrays from 1, tex pages from one
674 -- mcid and arrays in pdf count from 0.
675 function ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_in_page (mcnum,mcpagencnt,page)
676   ltx.__tag.page[page] = ltx.__tag.page[page] or {}
677   ltx.__tag.page[page][mcpagencnt] = mcnum
678   __tag_log("INFO TAG-MC-INTO-PAGE: page " .. page ..
679             ": inserting MCID " .. mcpagencnt .. " => " .. mcnum,3)
680 end

```

(End of definition for ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_in_page.)

ltx.__tag.func.update_mc_attributes

This updates the mc-attributes of a box. It should only be used on boxes which don't contain structure elements. The arguments are a box, the mc-num and the type (as a number)

```

681 local function __tag_update_mc_attributes (head,mcnum,type)
682   for n in node.traverse(head) do
683     node.set_attribute(n,mcntattributeid,mcnum)
684     node.set_attribute(n,mctypeattributeid,type)
685     if n.id == HLIST or n.id == VLIST then
686       __tag_update_mc_attributes (n.list,mcnum,type)
687     end
688   end
689   return head
690 end
691 ltx.__tag.func.update_mc_attributes = __tag_update_mc_attributes

```

(End of definition for ltx.__tag.func.update_mc_attributes.)

ltx.__tag.func.mark_page_elements

This is the main traversing function. See the lua comment for more details.

```
692 --[[
693     Now follows the core function
694     It wades through the shipout box and checks the attributes
695     ARGUMENTS
696     box: is a box,
697     mcpagecnt: num, the current page cnt of mc (should start at -1 in shipout box), needed fo
698     mcntprev: num, the attribute cnt of the previous node/whatever - if different we have a
699     mcopen: num, records if some bdc/emc is open
700     These arguments are only needed for log messages, if not present are replaces by fix str
701     name: string to describe the box
702     mctypeprev: num, the type attribute of the previous node/whatever
703
704     there are lots of logging messages currently. Should be cleaned up in due course.
705     One should also find ways to make the function shorter.
706 --]]
707
708 function ltx.__tag.func.mark_page_elements (box,mcpagecnt,mcntprev,mcopen,name,mctypeprev)
709     local name = name or ("SOMEBOX")
710     local mctypeprev = mctypeprev or -1
711     local abspage = status.total_pages + 1 -- the real counter is increased
712                                           -- inside the box so one off
713                                           -- if the callback is not used. (???)
714     __tag_log ("INFO TAG-ABSPAGE: " .. abspage,3)
715     __tag_log ("INFO TAG-ARGS: pagecnt".. mcpagecnt..
716               " prev "..mcntprev ..
717               " type prev "..mctypeprev,4)
718     __tag_log ("INFO TAG-TRAVERSING-BOX: ".. tostring(name)..
719               " TYPE ".. node.type(node.getid(box)),3)
720     local head = box.head -- ShipoutBox is a vlist?
721     if head then
722         mcnthead, mctypehead,taghead = __tag_get_mc_cnt_type_tag (head)
723         __tag_log ("INFO TAG-HEAD: " ..
724                   node.type(node.getid(head))..
725                   " MC"..tostring(mcnthead)..
726                   " => TAG " .. tostring(mctypehead)..
727                   " => ".. tostring(taghead),3)
728     else
729         __tag_log ("INFO TAG-NO-HEAD: head is "..
730                   tostring(head),3)
731     end
732     for n in node.traverse(head) do
733         local mcnt, mctype, tag = __tag_get_mc_cnt_type_tag (n)
734         local spaceattr = nodegetattribute(n,iwspaceattributeid) or -1
735         __tag_log ("INFO TAG-NODE: "..
736                   node.type(node.getid(n))..
737                   " MC".. tostring(mcnt)..
738                   " => TAG " .. tostring(mctype)..
739                   " => " .. tostring(tag),3)
740         if n.id == HLIST
741         then -- enter the hlist
742             mcopen,mcpagecnt,mcntprev,mctypeprev=
```

```

743     ltx.__tag.func.mark_page_elements (n,mcpagecnt,mcntprev,mcopen,"INTERNAL HLIST",mctype
744 elseif n.id == VLIST then -- enter the vlist
745     mcpopen,mcpagecnt,mcntprev,mctypeprev=
746     ltx.__tag.func.mark_page_elements (n,mcpagecnt,mcntprev,mcopen,"INTERNAL VLIST",mctype
747 elseif n.id == GLUE and not n.leader then -- at glue real space chars are inserted, but t
748                                     -- been done if the previous shipout wandering, so here it
749 elseif n.id == LOCAL_PAR then -- local_par is ignored
750 elseif n.id == PENALTY then -- penalty is ignored
751 elseif n.id == KERN then -- kern is ignored
752     __tag_log ("INFO TAG-KERN-SUBTYPE: "..
753     node.type(node.getid(n)).." "..n.subtype,4)
754 else
755     -- math is currently only logged.
756     -- we could mark the whole as math
757     -- for inner processing the mlist_to_hlist callback is probably needed.
758 if n.id == MATH then
759     __tag_log("INFO TAG-MATH-SUBTYPE: "..
760     node.type(node.getid(n)).." "..__tag_get_mathsubtype(n),4)
761 end
762 -- endmath
763 __tag_log("INFO TAG-MC-COMPARE: current "..
764     mcnt.." prev "..mcntprev,4)
765 if mcnt~=mcntprev then -- a new mc chunk
766     __tag_log ("INFO TAG-NEW-MC-NODE: "..
767     node.type(node.getid(n))..
768     " MC"..tostring(mcnt)..
769     " <=> PREVIOUS "..tostring(mcntprev),4)
770 if mcopen~=0 then -- there is a chunk open, close it (hope there is only one ...
771     box.list=__tag_insert_emc_node (box.list,n)
772     mcopen = mcopen - 1
773     __tag_log ("INFO TAG-INSERT-EMC: " ..
774     mcpagecnt .. " MCOPEX = " .. mcopen,3)
775 if mcopen ~=0 then
776     __tag_log ("WARN TAG-OPEN-MC: " .. mcopen,1)
777 end
778 end
779 if ltx.__tag.mc[mcnt] then
780 if ltx.__tag.mc[mcnt]["artifact"] then
781     __tag_log("INFO TAG-INSERT-ARTIFACT: "..
782     tostring(ltx.__tag.mc[mcnt]["artifact"]),3)
783 if ltx.__tag.mc[mcnt]["artifact"] == "" then
784     box.list = __tag_insert_bmc_node (box.list,n,"Artifact")
785 else
786     box.list = __tag_insert_bdc_node (box.list,n,"Artifact", "/Type /"..ltx.__tag.mc[mc
787 end
788 else
789     __tag_log("INFO TAG-INSERT-TAG: "..
790     tostring(tag),3)
791 mcpagecnt = mcpagecnt +1
792 __tag_log ("INFO TAG-INSERT-BDC: "..mcpagecnt,3)
793 local dict= "/MCID "..mcpagecnt
794 if ltx.__tag.mc[mcnt]["raw"] then
795     __tag_log("INFO TAG-USE-RAW: "..
796     tostring(ltx.__tag.mc[mcnt]["raw"]),3)

```

```

797         dict= dict .. " " .. ltx.__tag.mc[mccnt]["raw"]
798     end
799     if ltx.__tag.mc[mccnt]["alt"] then
800         __tag_log("INFO TAG-USE-ALT: "..
801             tostring(ltx.__tag.mc[mccnt]["alt"]),3)
802         dict= dict .. " " .. ltx.__tag.mc[mccnt]["alt"]
803     end
804     if ltx.__tag.mc[mccnt]["lang"] then
805         __tag_log("INFO TAG-USE-LANG: "..
806             tostring(ltx.__tag.mc[mccnt]["lang"]),3)
807         dict= dict .. " " .. ltx.__tag.mc[mccnt]["lang"]
808     end
809     if ltx.__tag.mc[mccnt]["actualtext"] then
810         __tag_log("INFO TAG-USE-ACTUALTEXT: "..
811             tostring(ltx.__tag.mc[mccnt]["actualtext"]),3)
812         dict= dict .. " " .. ltx.__tag.mc[mccnt]["actualtext"]
813     end
814     box.list = __tag_insert_bdc_node (box.list,n,tag, dict)
815     ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_kid (mccnt,mcpagecnt,abspage)
816     ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_in_page(mccnt,mcpagecnt,abspage)
817     ltx.__tag.trace.show_mc_data (mccnt,3)
818 end
819 mcpopen = mcpopen + 1
820 else
821     if tagunmarkedbool.mode == truebool.mode then
822         __tag_log("INFO TAG-NOT-TAGGED: this has not been tagged, using artifact",2)
823         box.list = __tag_insert_bmc_node (box.list,n,"Artifact")
824         mcpopen = mcpopen + 1
825     else
826         __tag_log("WARN TAG-NOT-TAGGED: this has not been tagged",1)
827     end
828 end
829 mccntprev = mccnt
830 end
831 end -- end if
832 end -- end for
833 if head then
834     mccntthead, mctypethead,tagthead = __tag_get_mc_cnt_type_tag (head)
835     __tag_log ("INFO TAG-ENDHEAD: " ..
836         node.type(node.getid(head))..
837         " MC"..tostring(mccntthead)..
838         " => TAG "..tostring(mctypethead)..
839         " => "..tostring(tagthead),4)
840 else
841     __tag_log ("INFO TAG-ENDHEAD: ".. tostring(head),4)
842 end
843 __tag_log ("INFO TAG-QUITTING-BOX "..
844     tostring(name)..
845     " TYPE ".. node.type(node.getid(box)),4)
846 return mcpopen,mcpagecnt,mccntprev,mctypeprev
847 end
848

```

(End of definition for ltx.__tag.func.mark_page_elements.)

ltx.__tag.func.mark_shipout This is the function used in the callback. Beside calling the traversing function it also checks if there is an open MC-chunk from a page break and insert the needed EMC literal.

```

849 function ltx.__tag.func.mark_shipout (box)
850   mcopen = ltx.__tag.func.mark_page_elements (box,-1,-100,0,"Shipout",-1)
851   if mcopen~=0 then -- there is a chunk open, close it (hope there is only one ...
852     local emcnode = __tag_backend_create_emc_node ()
853     local list = box.list
854     if list then
855       list = node.insert_after (list,node.tail(list),emcnode)
856       mcopen = mcopen - 1
857       __tag_log ("INFO SHIPOUT-INSERT-LAST-EMC: MCOPEM " .. mcopen,3)
858     else
859       __tag_log ("WARN SHIPOUT-UPS: this shouldn't happen",0)
860     end
861     if mcopen ~=0 then
862       __tag_log ("WARN SHIPOUT-MC-OPEN: " .. mcopen,1)
863     end
864   end
865 end

```

(End of definition for ltx.__tag.func.mark_shipout.)

7 Parenttree

ltx.__tag.func.fill_parent_tree_line These functions create the parent tree. The second, main function is used in the tagpdf-tree code. TODO check if the tree code can move into the backend code.

ltx.__tag.func.output_parenttree

```

866 function ltx.__tag.func.fill_parent_tree_line (page)
867   -- we need to get page-> i=kid -> mcnum -> structnum
868   -- pay attention: the kid numbers and the page number in the parent tree start with 0!
869   local numsentry = ""
870   local pdfpage = page-1
871   if ltx.__tag.page[page] and ltx.__tag.page[page][0] then
872     mcchunks=#ltx.__tag.page[page]
873     __tag_log("INFO PARENTTREE-NUM: page " ..
874             page.." has "..mcchunks.." +1 Elements ",4)
875     for i=0,mcchunks do
876       -- what does this log??
877       __tag_log("INFO PARENTTREE-CHUNKS: " ..
878             ltx.__tag.page[page][i],4)
879     end
880     if mcchunks == 0 then
881       -- only one chunk so no need for an array
882       local mcnum = ltx.__tag.page[page][0]
883       local structnum = ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["parent"]
884       local propname = "g__tag_struct_"..structnum.."_prop"
885       --local objref = ltx.__tag.tables[propname]["objref"] or "XXXX"
886       local objref = __tag_pdf_object_ref('__tag/struct',structnum)
887       __tag_log("INFO PARENTTREE-STRUCT-OBJREF: =====>" ..
888             tostring(objref),5)
889       numsentry = pdfpage .. " [".. objref .. "]"
890       __tag_log("INFO PARENTTREE-NUMENTRY: page " ..
891             page.." num entry = ".. numsentry,3)

```

```

892     else
893         numsentry = pdfpage .. " ["
894         for i=0,mcchunks do
895             local mcnum = ltx.__tag.page[page][i]
896             local structnum = ltx.__tag.mc[mcnum]["parent"] or 0
897             local propname = "g__tag_struct_"..structnum.."_prop"
898             --local objref = ltx.__tag.tables[propname]["objref"] or "XXXX"
899             local objref = __tag_pdf_object_ref('__tag/struct',structnum)
900             numsentry = numsentry .. " " .. objref
901         end
902         numsentry = numsentry .. "]" "
903         __tag_log("INFO PARENTTREE-NUMENTRY: page " ..
904             page.. " num entry = ".. numsentry,3)
905     end
906     else
907         __tag_log ("INFO PARENTTREE-NO-DATA: page "..page,3)
908         numsentry = pdfpage.." []"
909     end
910     return numsentry
911 end
912
913 function ltx.__tag.func.output_parenttree (abspage)
914     for i=1,abspage do
915         line = ltx.__tag.func.fill_parent_tree_line (i) .. "^^J"
916         tex.sprint(catlatex,line)
917     end
918 end

```

(End of definition for ltx.__tag.func.fill_parent_tree_line and ltx.__tag.func.output_parenttree.)

s_softhyphen_pre process_softhyphen_post

First some local definitions. Since these are only needed locally everything gets wrapped into a block.

```

919 do
920     local properties = node.get_properties_table()
921     local is_soft_hyphen_prop = 'tagpdf.rewrite-softhyphen.is_soft_hyphen'
922     local hyphen_char = 0x2D
923     local soft_hyphen_char = 0xAD

```

A lookup table to test if the font supports the soft hyphen glyph.

```

924     local softhyphen_fonts = setmetatable({}, {__index = function(t, fid)
925         local fdir = identifiers[fid]
926         local format = fdir and fdir.format
927         local result = (format == 'opentype' or format == 'truetype')
928         local characters = fdir and fdir.characters
929         result = result and (characters and characters[soft_hyphen_char]) ~= nil
930         t[fid] = result
931         return result
932     end})

```

A pre shaping callback to mark hyphens as being hyphenation hyphens. This runs before shaping to avoid affecting hyphens moved into discretionaries during shaping.

```

933     local function process_softhyphen_pre(head, _context, _dir)
934         if softhyphenbool.mode ~= truebool.mode then return true end
935         for disc, sub in node.traverse_id(DISC, head) do
936             if sub == explicit_disc or sub == regular_disc then

```

```

937     for n, _ch, _f in node.traverse_char(disc.pre) do
938         local props = properties[n]
939         if not props then
940             props = {}
941             properties[n] = props
942         end
943         props[is_soft_hyphen_prop] = true
944     end
945 end
946 end
947 return true
948 end
949

```

Finally do the actual replacement after shaping. No checking for double processing here since the operation is idempotent.

```

950 local function process_softhyphen_post(head, _context, _dir)
951     if softhyphenbool.mode ~= truebool.mode then return true end
952     for disc, sub in node.traverse_id(DISC, head) do
953         for n, ch, fid in node.traverse_glyph(disc.pre) do
954             local props = properties[n]
955             if softhyphen_fonts[fid] and ch == hyphen_char and props and props[is_soft_hyphen_prop]
956                 n.char = soft_hyphen_char
957                 props.glyph_info = nil
958             end
959         end
960     end
961     return true
962 end
963
964 luatexbase.add_to_callback('pre_shaping_filter', process_softhyphen_pre, 'tagpdf.rewrite-
softhyphen')
965 luatexbase.add_to_callback('post_shaping_filter', process_softhyphen_post, 'tagpdf.rewrite-
softhyphen')
966 end

```

(End of definition for process_softhyphen_pre process_softhyphen_post. This function is documented on page ??.)

8 parent-child rules

`role_get_parent_child_rule`

`ltx.__tag.func.role_get_parent_child_rule`

```

967 local function role_get_parent_child_rule (parent,child)
968     local state=
969     ltx.__tag.role.matrix[ltx.__tag.role.index[parent]]
970     and ltx.__tag.role.matrix[ltx.__tag.role.index[parent]][ltx.__tag.role.index[child]] or 0
971     return state
972 end
973 ltx.__tag.func.role_get_parent_child_rule=role_get_parent_child_rule

```

(End of definition for role_get_parent_child_rule and ltx.__tag.func.role_get_parent_child_rule. This function is documented on page ??.)

check_update_stashed
check_parent_child_rules
 ltx.__tag.func.check_parent_child_rules

These function allows to check the parent-child rules for the current set of structures. It should normally be used at the end of the document. Some stashed structures can still have a parentrole setting containing the STASHED keyword, there must be updated first, this is done with a helper command. To avoid that a faulty structure (where e.g. two structures point to each other) creates an endless loop we check for the real parent only for 10 loops.

```

974 function check_update_stashed (struct,loglevel,loop)
975   loop = (loop or 0) + 1
976   if loop > 10 then
977     __tag_log ('Warning: Too deeply nested stashed structures',0)
978     return
979   end
980   __tag_log ('updating parentrole for stashed structure '..struct,loglevel)
981   local parent = ltx.__tag.tables['g__tag_struct_ '..struct..'__prop']['parentnum']
982   if parent then
983     local ptag =
984       string.match(ltx.__tag.tables['g__tag_struct_ '..parent..'__prop']['parentrole'], "{(-)}{(-)}{(-)}")
985     if ptag == 'STASHED' then
986       -- look at the parent and update it first
987       check_update_stashed (parent,loglevel,loop)
988     end
989     -- now copy the parent role from the parent
990     ltx.__tag.tables['g__tag_struct_ '..struct..'__prop']['parentrole']
991     =
992     ltx.__tag.tables['g__tag_struct_ '..parent..'__prop']['parentrole']
993     __tag_log
994     ('new parentrole: ' .. ltx.__tag.tables['g__tag_struct_ '..struct..'__prop']['parentrole'],
995     else
996     __tag_log ('Warning: structure '..struct..' has no parent.',0)
997   end
998 end
999
1000 function check_parent_child_rules (loglevel)
1001   texio.write_nl('\n')
1002   __tag_log ('checking parent-child rules ... ',0)
1003   for i=2,ltx.tag.get_struct_counter() do
1004     local t,tNS=
1005       string.match(ltx.__tag.tables['g__tag_struct_ '..i..'__prop']['tag'], "{(-)}{(-)}{(-)}")
1006     local r,rNS=
1007       string.match(ltx.__tag.tables['g__tag_struct_ '..i..'__prop']['rolemap'], "{(-)}{(-)}{(-)}")
1008     local p,pNS=
1009       string.match(ltx.__tag.tables['g__tag_struct_ '..i..'__prop']['parentrole'], "{(-)}{(-)}{(-)}")
1010     local parent=ltx.__tag.tables['g__tag_struct_ '..i..'__prop']['parentnum']
1011     if parent then
1012       __tag_log (i..'': '.. t..'': '..tNS,loglevel)
1013       __tag_log (i..'': '.. r..'': '..rNS,loglevel)
1014       __tag_log (i..'': '.. p..'': '..pNS,loglevel)
1015       __tag_log ('parent of ' ..i..'': '.. parent,loglevel )
1016       if p == 'STASHED' then
  
```



```

1017     check_update_stashed (i,loglevel,0)
1018     p,pNS=
1019     string.match(ltx.__tag.tables['g__tag_struct_'.i..'__prop']['parentrole'], "{(-
)}{(-)}")
1020     end
1021     local pt,ptNS=
1022     string.match(ltx.__tag.tables['g__tag_struct_'.parent..'__prop']['tag'], "{(-
)}{(-)}")
1023     local pr,prNS=
1024     string.match(ltx.__tag.tables['g__tag_struct_'.parent..'__prop']['rolemap'], "{(-
)}{(-)}")
1025     local pp,ppNS=
1026     string.match(ltx.__tag.tables['g__tag_struct_'.parent..'__prop']['parentrole'], "{(-
)}{(-)}")
1027     if pp == 'STASHED' then
1028         check_update_stashed (parent,loglevel,0)
1029         pp,ppNS=
1030         string.match(ltx.__tag.tables['g__tag_struct_'.parent..'__prop']['parentrole'], "{(-
)}{(-)}")
1031     end
1032     __tag_log (parent..'': '.. pt..'': '..ptNS,loglevel)
1033     __tag_log (parent..'': '.. pr..'': '..prNS,loglevel)
1034     __tag_log (parent..'': '.. pp..'': '..ppNS,loglevel)
1035     -- now check the rule.
1036     -- at first rolemap of child against rolemap of parent.
1037     local state=ltx.__tag.func.role_get_parent_child_rule (pr,r)
1038     __tag_log ('rule of '..pr..'->".r..' is '..state,loglevel)
1039     -- if the state is 7 we check against parentrole of the parent
1040     if state == 7 then
1041         state=ltx.__tag.func.role_get_parent_child_rule (pp,r)
1042         __tag_log ('Parent-Child relation '..pp..'->".r..' is '..state,loglevel)
1043     end
1044     if state == 0 then
1045         __tag_log
1046         ('Warning: Parent-Child relation '
1047         '..ptNS..'': '..pt..' -> '..tNS..'': '..t..' is unknown',0)
1048         __tag_log
1049         ('Structure ' ..parent..' -> '..i,0)
1050     end
1051     if state == -1 then
1052         __tag_log
1053         ('Warning: Parent-Child relation '
1054         '..ptNS..'': '..pt..' -> '..tNS..'': '..t..' is not allowed',0)
1055         __tag_log
1056         ('Structure ' ..parent..' -> '..i,0)
1057     end
1058     -- check also for MC
1059     state =ltx.__tag.func.role_get_parent_child_rule ( r , 'MC')
1060     local curtag=r
1061     if state == 7 then
1062         state =ltx.__tag.func.role_get_parent_child_rule ( p , 'MC')
1063         local curtag=p
1064     end
1065     if state == -1 then

```

```

1066     if ltx.__tag.struct[i] and NEXT(ltx.__tag.struct[i]) then
1067         __tag_log
1068             ('Warning: Real content (MC) is not allowed in ' ..curtag,0)
1069         end
1070     end
1071     __tag_log('=====',loglevel)
1072 end
1073 end -- end for
1074 end
1075
1076 ltx.__tag.func.check_parent_child_rules=check_parent_child_rules
1077

```

(End of definition for check_update_stashed, check_parent_child_rules, and ltx.__tag.func.check_parent_child_rules. These functions are documented on page ??.)

9 Link annotations

If the linksplit code has been loaded we use it to add the OBJR of links to the structure tree.

```

1078 if luatexbase.callbacktypes['linksplit'] then
1079     luatexbase.add_to_callback('linksplit', function(start_link, position)
1080         local structnum =
1081             node.get_attribute(start_link,luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_structnum_attr)
1082         if structnum and structnum > -1 then
1083             local s = ltx.__tag.tables['g__tag_struct_'.structnum..'__prop']['rolemap']
1084             if s and (string.find(s,'Link') or string.find(s,'Reference')) then
1085                 local struct_insert_annot_shipout = token.create'__tag_struct_insert_annot_shipout'
1086                 local parentnum = tex.count['c@g__tag_parenttree_obj_int']
1087                 start_link.link_attr =
1088                     start_link.link_attr ..
1089                     ' /LTEX_position /' .. position ..
1090                     '/StructParent ' .. parentnum
1091                 tex.sprint(catlatex,struct_insert_annot_shipout,'{'..
1092                     structnum..'}'..'
1093                     start_link.objnum..' 0 R}'..'
1094                     parentnum ..}')
1095                 -- the counter must be set explicitly as struct_insert_annot_shipout doesn't do it
1096                 tex.setcount('global','c@g__tag_parenttree_obj_int',parentnum +1)
1097                 __tag_log(position .. " link part has object id " .. start_link.objnum .. " and s
1098             else
1099                 __tag_log('Warning: Link not in Link or Reference structure element',0)
1100                 __tag_log('OBJR not created',0)
1101                 __tag_log('',0)
1102             end
1103         end
1104     end, 'tagpdf')
1105 end
1106 </lua>

```

Part X

The `tagpdf-roles` module

Tags, roles and namespace code

Part of the `tagpdf` package

`add-new-tag` (setup-key)
`tag` (rolemap-key)
`namespace` (rolemap-key)
`role` (rolemap-key)
`role-namespace` (rolemap-key)

The `add-new-tag` key can be used in `\tagpdfsetup` to declare and rolemap new tags. It takes as value a key-value list or a simple `new-tag/old-tag`.

The key-value list knows the following keys:

tag This is the name of the new tag as it should then be used in `\tagstructbegin`.

namespace This is the namespace of the new tag. The value should be a shorthand of a namespace. The allowed values are currently `pdf`, `pdf2`, `mathml,latex`, `latex-book` and `user`. The default value (and recommended value for a new tag) is `user`. The public name of the user namespace is `tag/NS/user`. This can be used to reference the namespace e.g. in attributes.

role This is the tag the tag should be mapped too. In a PDF 1.7 or earlier this is normally a tag from the `pdf` set, in PDF 2.0 from the `pdf`, `pdf2` and `mathml` set. It can also be a user tag. The tag must be declared before, as the code retrieves the class of the new tag from it. The PDF format allows mapping to be done transitively. But `tagpdf` can't/won't check such unusual role mapping.

role-namespace If the role is a known tag the default value is the default namespace of this tag. With this key a specific namespace can be forced.

Namespaces are mostly a PDF 2.0 property, but it doesn't harm to set them also in a PDF 1.7 or earlier.

`\tag_check_child:nnTF` `\tag_check_child:nnTF` `{<tag>}` `{<namespace>}` `{<true code>}` `{<false code>}`

This checks if the tag `<tag>` from the name space `<namespace>` can be used at the current position. In `tagpdf-base` it is always true.

```
1 <@@=tag>
2 <*header>
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-roles-code} {2025-06-27} {0.99s}
4 {part of tagpdf - code related to roles and structure names}
5 </header>
```

1 Code related to roles and structure names

⁶ `*package`

1.1 Variables

Tags are used in structures (`\tagstructbegin`) and mc-chunks (`\tagmcbegin`).

They have a name (a string), in lua a number (for the lua attribute), and in PDF 2.0 belong to one or more name spaces, with one being the default name space.

Tags of structures are classified, e.g. as grouping, inline or block level structure (and a few special classes like lists and tables), and must follow containments rules depending on their classification (for example a inline structure can not contain a block level structure). New tags inherit their classification from their rolemapping to the standard namespaces (`pdf` and/or `pdf2`). We store this classification as it will probably be needed for tests but currently the data is not much used. The classification for math (and the containment rules) is unclear currently and so not set.

The attribute number is only relevant in lua and only for the MC chunks (so tags with the same name from different names spaces can have the same number), and so only stored if luatex is detected.

Due to the namespaces the storing and processing of tags and there data are different in various places for PDF 2.0 and PDF <2.0, which makes things a bit difficult and leads to some duplications. Perhaps at some time there should be a clear split.

This are the main variables used by the code:

`\g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop` This is the core list of tag names. It uses tags as keys and the shorthand (e.g. `pdf2`, or `mathml`) of the default name space as value.

In pdf 2.0 the value is needed in the structure dictionaries.

`\g__tag_role_tags_class_prop` This contains for each tag a classification type. It is used in pdf <2.0.

`\g__tag_role_NS_prop` This contains the names spaces. The values are the object references. They are used in pdf 2.0.

`\g__tag_role_rolemap_prop` This contains for each tag the role to a standard tag. It is used in pdf<2.0 for tag checking and to fill at the end the RoleMap dictionary.

`g_@@_role/RoleMap_dict` This dictionary contains the standard rolemaps. It is relevant only for pdf <2.0.

`\g__tag_role_NS_<ns>_prop` This prop contains the tags of a name space and their role. The props are also use for remapping. As value they contain two brace groups: tag and namespace. In pdf <2.0 the namespace is empty.

`\g__tag_role_NS_<ns>_class_prop` This prop contains the tags of a name space and their type. The value is only needed for pdf 2.0.

`\g__tag_role_index_prop` This prop contains the standard tags (`pdf` in pdf<2.0, `pdf, pdf2 + mathml` in pdf 2.0) as keys, the values are a two-digit number. These numbers are used to get the containment rule of two tags from the intarray.

`\g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop` This is the core list of tag names. It uses tags as keys and the shorthand (e.g. `pdf2`, or `mathml`) of the default name space as value. We store the default name space also in pdf <2.0, even if not needed: it doesn't harm and simplifies the code. There is no need to access this from lua, so we use the standard prop commands.

⁷ `\prop_new:N \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop`

(End of definition for `\g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop`.)

`\g__tag_role_tags_class_prop` With pdf 2.0 we store the class in the NS dependent props. With pdf <2.0 we store for now the type(s) of a tag in a common prop. Tags that are rolemapped should get the type from the target.

`\prop_new:N \g__tag_role_tags_class_prop`

(End of definition for `\g__tag_role_tags_class_prop`.)

`\g__tag_role_NS_prop` This holds the list of supported name spaces. The keys are the name tagpdf will use, the values the object reference. The urls identifier are stored in related dict object.

mathml <http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML>

pdf2 <http://iso.org/pdf/ssn>

pdf <http://iso.org/pdf/ssn> (default)

user `\c__tag_role_userNS_id_str` (random id, for user tags)

latex <https://www.latex-project.org/ns/dft>

latex-book <https://www.latex-project.org/ns/book>

More namespaces are possible and their objects references and their rolemaps must be collected so that an array can be written to the StructTreeRoot at the end (see tagpdf-tree). We use a prop to store the object reference as it will be needed rather often.

`\prop_new:N \g__tag_role_NS_prop`

(End of definition for `\g__tag_role_NS_prop`.)

`\g__tag_role_index_prop` This prop contains the standard tags (pdf in pdf<2.0, pdf, pdf2 + mathml in pdf 2.0) as keys, the values are a two-digit number. These numbers are used to get the containment rule of two tags from the intarray.

`\prop_new:N \g__tag_role_index_prop`

(End of definition for `\g__tag_role_index_prop`.)

`\l__tag_role_debug_prop` This variable is used to pass more infos to debug messages.

`\prop_new:N \l__tag_role_debug_prop`

(End of definition for `\l__tag_role_debug_prop`.)

We need also a bunch of temporary variables.

`\l__tag_role_tag_tmpa_tl`

`\l__tag_role_tag_namespace_tmpa_tl`

`\tl_new:N \l__tag_role_tag_tmpa_tl`

`\l__tag_role_tag_namespace_tmpb_tl` %

`\tl_new:N \l__tag_role_tag_namespace_tmpa_tl`

`\l__tag_role_role_tmpa_tl`

`\tl_new:N \l__tag_role_tag_namespace_tmpb_tl`

`\l__tag_role_role_namespace_tmpa_tl`

`\tl_new:N \l__tag_role_role_tmpa_tl`

`\l__tag_role_tmpa_seq`

`\tl_new:N \l__tag_role_role_namespace_tmpa_tl`

`\seq_new:N \l__tag_role_tmpa_seq`

(End of definition for `\l__tag_role_tag_tmpa_tl` and others.)

1.2 Namespaces

The following commands setups a name space. With pdf version <2.0 this is only a prop with the rolemap. With pdf 2.0 a dictionary must be set up. Such a name space dictionaries can contain an optional /Schema and /RoleMapNS entry. We only reserve the objects but delay the writing to the finish code, where we can test if the keys and the name spaces are actually needed. This commands setups objects for the name space and its rolemap. It also initialize a dict to collect the rolemaps if needed, and a property with the tags of the name space and their rolemapping for loops. It is unclear if a reference to a schema file will be ever needed, but it doesn't harm

`g__tag_role/RoleMap_dict` This is the object which contains the normal RoleMap. It is probably not needed in pdf
`\g__tag_role_rolemap_prop` 2.0 but currently kept.

```
18 \pdfdict_new:n {g__tag_role/RoleMap_dict}
19 \__tag_prop_new:N \g__tag_role_rolemap_prop
```

(End of definition for `g__tag_role/RoleMap_dict` and `\g__tag_role_rolemap_prop`.)

```
\__tag_role_NS_new:nnn \__tag_role_NS_new:nnn {<shorthand>} {<URI-ID>} {<Schema>}
```

```
\__tag_role_NS_new:nnn
```

```
20 \pdf_version_compare:NnTF < {2.0}
21 {
22   \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_role_NS_new:nnn #1 #2 #3
23   {
24     \__tag_prop_new:c {g__tag_role_NS_#1_prop }
25     \prop_new:c {g__tag_role_NS_#1_class_prop }
26     \prop_gput:Nne \g__tag_role_NS_prop {#1}{#2}
27   }
28 }
29 {
30   \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_role_NS_new:nnn #1 #2 #3
31   {
32     \__tag_prop_new:c {g__tag_role_NS_#1_prop }
33     \prop_new:c {g__tag_role_NS_#1_class_prop }
34     \pdf_object_new:n {tag/NS/#1}
35     \pdfdict_new:n {g__tag_role/namespace_#1_dict}
36     \pdf_object_new:n {__tag/RoleMapNS/#1}
37     \pdfdict_new:n {g__tag_role/RoleMapNS_#1_dict}
38     \pdfdict_gput:nnn
39       {g__tag_role/namespace_#1_dict}
40       {Type}
41       {/Namespace}
42     \pdf_string_from_unicode:nnN{utf8/string}{#2}\l__tag_tmpa_str
43     \tl_if_empty:NF \l__tag_tmpa_str
44     {
45       \pdfdict_gput:nne
46         {g__tag_role/namespace_#1_dict}
47         {NS}
48         {\l__tag_tmpa_str}
49     }
50     %RoleMapNS is added in tree
51     \tl_if_empty:NF {#3}
```

```

52     {
53       \pdfdict_gput:nne{g__tag_role/namespace_#1_dict}
54       {Schema}{#3}
55     }
56     \prop_gput:Nne \g__tag_role_NS_prop {#1}{\pdf_object_ref:n{tag/NS/#1~}}
57   }
58 }

```

(End of definition for `__tag_role_NS_new:nnn`.)

We need an id for the user space. For the tests it should be possible to set it to a fix value. So we use random numbers which can be fixed by setting a seed. We fake a sort of GUID but do not try to be really exact as it doesn't matter ...

`\c__tag_role_userNS_id_str`

```

59 \str_const:Ne \c__tag_role_userNS_id_str
60   { data:,
61     \int_to_Hex:n{\int_rand:n {65535}}
62     \int_to_Hex:n{\int_rand:n {65535}}
63     -
64     \int_to_Hex:n{\int_rand:n {65535}}
65     -
66     \int_to_Hex:n{\int_rand:n {65535}}
67     -
68     \int_to_Hex:n{\int_rand:n {65535}}
69     -
70     \int_to_Hex:n{\int_rand:n {16777215}}
71     \int_to_Hex:n{\int_rand:n {16777215}}
72   }

```

(End of definition for `\c__tag_role_userNS_id_str`.)

Now we setup the standard names spaces. The mathml space is loaded also for pdf < 2.0 but not added to RoleMap unless a boolean is set to true with `tagpdf-setup{mathml-tags}`.

```

73 \bool_new:N \g__tag_role_add_mathml_bool
74 \__tag_role_NS_new:nnn {pdf} {http://iso.org/pdf/ssn}{}
75 \__tag_role_NS_new:nnn {pdf2} {http://iso.org/pdf2/ssn}{}
76 \__tag_role_NS_new:nnn {mathml} {http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML}{}
77 \__tag_role_NS_new:nnn {latex} {https://www.latex-project.org/ns/dflt}{}
78 \__tag_role_NS_new:nnn {latex-book} {https://www.latex-project.org/ns/book}{}
79 \exp_args:Nne
80   \__tag_role_NS_new:nnn {user}{\c__tag_role_userNS_id_str}{}

```

1.3 Adding a new tag

Both when reading the files and when setting up a tag manually we have to store data in various places.

`__tag_role_alloctag:nnn`

This command allocates a new tag without role mapping. In the lua backend it will also record the attribute value.

```

81 \pdf_version_compare:NnTF < {2.0}
82   {
83     \sys_if_engine luatex:TF
84     {

```

```

85 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_role_alloctag:nnn #1 #2 #3 %#1 tagname, ns, type
86 {
87   \lua_now:e { ltx.__tag.func.alloctag ('#1') }
88   \prop_gput:Nnn \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop {#1}{#2}
89   \__tag_prop_gput:cnn {g__tag_role_NS_#2_prop} {#1}{{}{}}
90   \prop_gput:Nnn \g__tag_role_tags_class_prop {#1}{#3}
91   \prop_gput:cnn {g__tag_role_NS_#2_class_prop} {#1}{--UNUSED--}
92 }
93 }
94 {
95 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_role_alloctag:nnn #1 #2 #3
96 {
97   \prop_gput:Nnn \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop {#1}{#2}
98   \__tag_prop_gput:cnn {g__tag_role_NS_#2_prop} {#1}{{}{}}
99   \prop_gput:Nnn \g__tag_role_tags_class_prop {#1}{#3}
100  \prop_gput:cnn {g__tag_role_NS_#2_class_prop} {#1}{--UNUSED--}
101 }
102 }
103 }
104 {
105 \sys_if_engine luatex:TF
106 {
107   \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_role_alloctag:nnn #1 #2 #3 %#1 tagname, ns, type
108   {
109     \lua_now:e { ltx.__tag.func.alloctag ('#1') }
110     \prop_gput:Nnn \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop {#1}{#2}
111     \__tag_prop_gput:cnn {g__tag_role_NS_#2_prop} {#1}{{}{}}
112     \prop_gput:Nnn \g__tag_role_tags_class_prop {#1}{--UNUSED--}
113     \prop_gput:cnn {g__tag_role_NS_#2_class_prop} {#1}{#3}
114   }
115 }
116 {
117   \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_role_alloctag:nnn #1 #2 #3
118   {
119     \prop_gput:Nnn \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop {#1}{#2}
120     \__tag_prop_gput:cnn {g__tag_role_NS_#2_prop} {#1}{{}{}}
121     \prop_gput:Nnn \g__tag_role_tags_class_prop {#1}{--UNUSED--}
122     \prop_gput:cnn {g__tag_role_NS_#2_class_prop} {#1}{#3}
123   }
124 }
125 }
126 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_role_alloctag:nnn {nno}

```

(End of definition for __tag_role_alloctag:nnn.)

1.3.1 pdf 1.7 and earlier

__tag_role_add_tag:nn The pdf 1.7 version has only two arguments: new and rolemap name. The role must be an existing tag and should not be empty. We allow to change the role of an existing tag: as the rolemap is written at the end not confusion can happen.

```

127 \cs_new_protected:Nn \__tag_role_add_tag:nn % (new) name, reference to old
128 {

```

checks and messages


```

129  \__tag_check_add_tag_role:nn {#1}{#2}
130  \prop_get:NnNF \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop {#1}\l__tag_tmp_unused_tl
131  {
132    \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_loglevel_int} > { 0 }
133    {
134      \msg_info:nnn { tag }{new-tag}{#1}
135    }
136  }

```

now the addition

```

137  \prop_get:NnNF \g__tag_role_tags_class_prop {#2}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
138  {
139    \tl_set:Nn\l__tag_tmpa_tl{--UNKNOWN--}
140  }
141  \__tag_role_alloctag:nno {#1}{user} { \l__tag_tmpa_tl }

```

We resolve rolemapping recursively so that all targets are stored as standard tags.

```

142  \tl_if_empty:nF { #2 }
143  {
144    \prop_get:NnNTF \g__tag_role_rolemap_prop {#2}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
145    {
146      \__tag_prop_gput:Nno \g__tag_role_rolemap_prop {#1}{\l__tag_tmpa_tl}
147    }
148    {
149      \__tag_prop_gput:Nne \g__tag_role_rolemap_prop {#1}{\tl_to_str:n{#2}}
150    }
151  }
152  }
153  \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_role_add_tag:nn {oo,ne}

```

(End of definition for __tag_role_add_tag:nn.)

For the parent-child test we must be able to get the role. We use the same number of arguments as for the 2.0 command. If there is no role, we assume a standard tag. Note: this is quite fast and a move to lua doesn't improve speed.

__tag_role_get:nnNN

```

154  \pdf_version_compare:NnT < {2.0}
155  {
156    \cs_new:Npn \__tag_role_get:nnNN #1#2#3#4 %#1 tag, #2 NS, #3 tlvar which hold the role tag
157    {
158      \prop_get:NnNF \g__tag_role_rolemap_prop {#1}#3
159      {
160        \tl_set:Nn #3 {#1}
161      }
162      \tl_set:Nn #4 {}
163    }
164    \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_role_get:nnNN {ooNN}
165  }
166

```

(End of definition for __tag_role_get:nnNN.)

1.3.2 The pdf 2.0 version

_tag_role_add_tag:nnnn The pdf 2.0 version takes four arguments: tag/namespace/role/namespace

```

167 \cs_new_protected:Nn \_tag_role_add_tag:nnnn %tag/namespace/role/namespace
168 {
169   \__tag_check_add_tag_role:nnn {#1/#2}{#3}{#4}
170   \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_loglevel_int} > { 0 }
171     {
172       \msg_info:nnn { tag }{new-tag}{#1}
173     }
174   \prop_if_exist:cTF
175     { g__tag_role_NS_#4_class_prop }
176     {
177       \prop_get:cnN { g__tag_role_NS_#4_class_prop } {#3}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
178       \quark_if_no_value:NT \l__tag_tmpa_tl
179         {
180           \tl_set:Nn\l__tag_tmpa_tl{--UNKNOWN--}
181         }
182       }
183     { \tl_set:Nn\l__tag_tmpa_tl{--UNKNOWN--} }
184   \_tag_role_alloctag:nno {#1}{#2}{ \l__tag_tmpa_tl }

```

Do not remap standard tags. TODO add warning?

```

185   \tl_if_in:nnF {-pdf-pdf2-mathml-}{-#2-}
186     {
187       \pdfdict_gput:nne {g__tag_role/RoleMapNS_#2_dict}{#1}
188       {
189         [
190           \pdf_name_from_unicode_e:n{#3}
191           \c_space_tl
192           \pdf_object_ref:n {tag/NS/#4}
193         ]
194       }
195     }

```

We resolve rolemapping recursively so that all targets are stored as standard tags for the tests.

```

196   \tl_if_empty:nF { #2 }
197     {
198       \prop_get:cnN { g__tag_role_NS_#4_prop } {#3}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
199       \quark_if_no_value:NTF \l__tag_tmpa_tl
200         {
201           \__tag_prop_gput:cne { g__tag_role_NS_#2_prop } {#1}
202           {{\tl_to_str:n{#3}}{\tl_to_str:n{#4}}}
203         }
204         {
205           \__tag_prop_gput:cno { g__tag_role_NS_#2_prop } {#1}{\l__tag_tmpa_tl}
206         }
207       }

```

We also store into the pdf 1.7 rolemapping so that we can add that as fallback for pdf 1.7 processor

```

208   \bool_if:NT \l__tag_role_update_bool
209     {
210       \tl_if_empty:nF { #3 }

```

```

211     {
212       \tl_if_eq:nnF{#1}{#3}
213       {
214         \prop_get:NnN \g__tag_role_rolemap_prop {#3}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
215         \quark_if_no_value:NTF \l__tag_tmpa_tl
216         {
217           \__tag_prop_gput:Nne \g__tag_role_rolemap_prop {#1}{\tl_to_str:n{#3}}
218         }
219         {
220           \__tag_prop_gput:Nno \g__tag_role_rolemap_prop {#1}{\l__tag_tmpa_tl}
221         }
222       }
223     }
224   }
225 }
226 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_role_add_tag:nnnn {oooo}

```

(End of definition for __tag_role_add_tag:nnnn.)

For the parent-child test we must be able to get the role. We use the same number of arguments as for the <2.0 command. Note: this is quite fast and a move to lua doesn't improve speed.

__tag_role_get:nnNN

```

227 \pdf_version_compare:NnF < {2.0}
228 {
229   \cs_new:Npn \__tag_role_get:nnNN #1#2#3#4
230     % #1 tag, #2 NS,
231     % #3 tlvar which hold the role tag
232     % #4 tlvar which hold the name of the target NS
233   {
234     \prop_if_exist:cTF {g__tag_role_NS_#2_prop}
235     {
236       \prop_get:cnNTF {g__tag_role_NS_#2_prop} {#1}\l__tag_get_tmpc_tl
237       {
238         \tl_set:Ne #3 {\exp_last_unbraced:No\use_i:nn {\l__tag_get_tmpc_tl}}
239         \tl_set:Ne #4 {\exp_last_unbraced:No\use_ii:nn {\l__tag_get_tmpc_tl}}
240       }
241       {
242         \msg_warning:nnn { tag } {role-unknown-tag} { #1 }
243         \tl_set:Nn #3 {#1}
244         \tl_set:Nn #4 {#2}
245       }
246     }
247     {
248       \msg_warning:nnn { tag } {role-unknown-NS} { #2 }
249       \tl_set:Nn #3 {#1}
250       \tl_set:Nn #4 {#2}
251     }
252   }
253   \cs_generate_variant:Nn \__tag_role_get:nnNN {ooNN}
254 }

```

(End of definition for __tag_role_get:nnNN.)

1.4 Helper command to read the data from files

In this section we setup the helper command to read namespace files.

```

255 \bool_new:N\l__tag_role_update_bool
256 \bool_set_true:N \l__tag_role_update_bool
257 \pdf_version_compare:NnTF < {2.0}
258 {
259   \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_role_read_namespace_line:nw #1#2,#3,#4,#5,#6\q_stop %
260   % #1 NS, #2 tag, #3 rolemap, #4 NS rolemap #5 type
261   {
262     \tl_if_empty:nF { #2 }
263     {
264       \bool_if:NTF \l__tag_role_update_bool
265       {
266         \tl_if_empty:nTF {#5}
267         {
268           \prop_get:NnN \g__tag_role_tags_class_prop {#3}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
269           \quark_if_no_value:NT \l__tag_tmpa_tl
270           {
271             \tl_set:Nn\l__tag_tmpa_tl{--UNKNOWN--}
272           }
273         }
274         {
275           \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_tl {#5}
276         }
277         \__tag_role_alloctag:nno {#2} {#1} { \l__tag_tmpa_tl }
278         \tl_if_eq:nnF {#2}{#3}
279         {
280           \__tag_role_add_tag:nn {#2}{#3}
281         }
282         \__tag_prop_gput:cnn {g__tag_role_NS_#1_prop} {#2}{#3}{}
283       }
284       {
285         \__tag_prop_gput:cnn {g__tag_role_NS_#1_prop} {#2}{#3}{}
286         \prop_gput:cnn {g__tag_role_NS_#1_class_prop} {#2}{--UNUSED--}
287       }
288     }
289   }
290 }
291 {
292   \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_role_read_namespace_line:nw #1#2,#3,#4,#5,#6\q_stop %
293   % #1 NS, #2 tag, #3 rolemap, #4 NS rolemap #5 type
294   {
295     \tl_if_empty:nF {#2}
296     {
297       \tl_if_empty:nTF {#5}
298       {
299         \prop_get:cnN { g__tag_role_NS_#4_class_prop } {#3}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
300         \quark_if_no_value:NT \l__tag_tmpa_tl

```

```

301         {
302         \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_tl {--UNKNOWN--}
303         }
304     }
305     {
306     \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_tl {#5}
307     }
308     \__tag_role_alloctag:nno {#2} {#1} { \l__tag_tmpa_tl }
309     \bool_lazy_and:nnT
310     { ! \tl_if_empty_p:n {#3} } { ! \str_if_eq_p:nn {#1}{pdf2} }
311     {
312     \__tag_role_add_tag:nxxx {#2}{#1}{#3}{#4}
313     }
314     \__tag_prop_gput:cnn {g__tag_role_NS_#1_prop} {#2}{#3}{#4}
315     }
316 }
317 }

```

(End of definition for __tag_role_read_namespace_line:nw.)

__tag_role_read_namespace:nn

This command reads a namespace file in the format tagpdf-ns-XX.def

```

318 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_role_read_namespace:nn #1 #2 %name of namespace #2 name of file
319 {
320     \prop_if_exist:cF {g__tag_role_NS_#1_prop}
321     { \msg_warning:nnn {tag}{namespace-unknown}{#1} }
322     \file_if_exist:nTF { tagpdf-ns-#2.def }
323     {
324     \ior_open:Nn \g_tmpa_ior {tagpdf-ns-#2.def}
325     \msg_info:nnn {tag}{read-namespace}{#2}
326     \ior_map_inline:Nn \g_tmpa_ior
327     {
328     \__tag_role_read_namespace_line:nw {#1} ##1,,, \q_stop
329     }
330     \ior_close:N\g_tmpa_ior
331     }
332     {
333     \msg_info:nnn{tag}{namespace-missing}{#2}
334     }
335 }
336

```

(End of definition for __tag_role_read_namespace:nn.)

__tag_role_read_namespace:n

This command reads the default namespace file.

```

337 \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_role_read_namespace:n #1 %name of namespace
338 {
339     \__tag_role_read_namespace:nn {#1}{#1}
340 }

```

(End of definition for __tag_role_read_namespace:n.)

1.5 Reading the default data

The order is important as we want pdf2 and latex as default: if two namespace define the same tag, the last one defines which one is used if the namespace is not explicitly given.

```
341 \__tag_role_read_namespace:n {pdf}
342 \__tag_role_read_namespace:n {pdf2}
343 \__tag_role_read_namespace:n {mathml}
```

in pdf 1.7 the following namespaces should only store the settings for later use:

```
344 \bool_set_false:N\l__tag_role_update_bool
345 \__tag_role_read_namespace:n {latex-book}
346 \bool_set_true:N\l__tag_role_update_bool
347 \__tag_role_read_namespace:n {latex}
348 \__tag_role_read_namespace:nn {latex} {latex-lab}
349 \__tag_role_read_namespace:n {pdf}
350 \__tag_role_read_namespace:n {pdf2}
```

But the class provides a `\chapter` command then we switch

```
351 \pdf_version_compare:NnTF < {2.0}
352 {
353   \hook_gput_code:nnn {begindocument}{tagpdf}
354   {
355     \bool_lazy_and:nnT
356     {
357       \cs_if_exist_p:N \chapter
358     }
359     {
360       \cs_if_exist_p:N \c@chapter
361     }
362     {
363       \prop_map_inline:cn{g__tag_role_NS_latex-book_prop}
364       {
365         \__tag_role_add_tag:ne {#1}{\use_i:nn #2\c_empty_tl\c_empty_tl}
366       }
367     }
368   }
369 }
370 {
371   \hook_gput_code:nnn {begindocument}{tagpdf}
372   {
373     \bool_lazy_and:nnT
374     {
375       \cs_if_exist_p:N \chapter
376     }
377     {
378       \cs_if_exist_p:N \c@chapter
379     }
380     {
381       \prop_map_inline:cn{g__tag_role_NS_latex-book_prop}
382       {
383         \prop_gput:Nnn \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop { #1 }{ latex-book }
384         \__tag_prop_gput:Nne
385         \g__tag_role_rolemap_prop {#1}{\use_i:nn #2\c_empty_tl\c_empty_tl}
386       }
387     }
388   }
389 }
```

```

388     }
389 }

```

1.6 Parent-child rules

PDF define various rules about which tag can be a child of another tag. The following code implements the matrix to allow to use it in tests.

`\g_tag_role_parent_child_intarray` This intarray will store the rule as a number. For parent nm and child ij (n,m,i,j digits) the rule is at position nmij. As we have around 56 tags, we need roughly a size 6000.

```

390 \intarray_new:Nn \g_tag_role_parent_child_intarray {6000}

```

(End of definition for `\g_tag_role_parent_child_intarray`.)

`\c_tag_role_rules_prop` and `\c_tag_role_rules_num_prop` These two properties map the rule strings to numbers and back. There are in `tagpdf-data.dtx` near the csv files for easier maintenance.

(End of definition for `\c_tag_role_rules_prop` and `\c_tag_role_rules_num_prop`.)

`_tag_store_parent_child_rule:nnn` The helper command is used to store the rule. It assumes that parent and child are given as 2-digit number!

```

391 \sys_if_engine_luatex:TF
392 {
393   \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_store_parent_child_rule:nnn #1 #2 #3 % num parent, num child,
394     {
395       \prop_get:NeNTF \c_tag_role_rules_prop{#3} \l__tag_tmp_unused_tl
396       {
397         \intarray_gset:Nnn \g_tag_role_parent_child_intarray
398           { #1#2 }{0\l__tag_tmp_unused_tl}
399         \lua_now:e
400         {
401           ltx.__tag.role.matrix[#1] = ltx.__tag.role.matrix[#1] or {}
402           ltx.__tag.role.matrix[#1][#2] = 0\l__tag_tmp_unused_tl
403         }
404       }
405     {
406       \intarray_gset:Nnn \g_tag_role_parent_child_intarray
407         { #1#2 }{0}
408       \lua_now:e
409       {
410         ltx.__tag.role.matrix[#1] = ltx.__tag.role.matrix[#1] or {}
411         ltx.__tag.role.matrix[#1][#2] = 0
412       }
413     }
414   }
415 }
416 {
417   \cs_new_protected:Npn \_tag_store_parent_child_rule:nnn #1 #2 #3 % num parent, num child,
418     {
419       \prop_get:NeNTF \c_tag_role_rules_prop{#3} \l__tag_tmp_unused_tl
420       {
421         \intarray_gset:Nnn \g_tag_role_parent_child_intarray
422           { #1#2 }{0\l__tag_tmp_unused_tl}
423       }

```

```

424     {
425     \intarray_gset:Nnn \g__tag_role_parent_child_intarray
426     { #1#2 }{0}
427     }
428   }
429 }

```

(End of definition for _tag_store_parent_child_rule:nnn.)

1.6.1 Reading in the csv-files

This counter will be used to identify the first (non-comment) line

```

430 \int_zero:N \l__tag_tmpa_int

```

Open the file depending on the PDF version

```

431 \pdf_version_compare:NnTF < {2.0}
432 {
433   \ior_open:Nn \g_tmpa_ior {tagpdf-parent-child.csv}
434 }
435 {
436   \ior_open:Nn \g_tmpa_ior {tagpdf-parent-child-2.csv}
437 }

```

Now the main loop over the file

```

438 \ior_map_inline:Nn \g_tmpa_ior
439 {

```

ignore lines containing only comments

```

440   \tl_if_empty:nF{#1}
441   {

```

count the lines ...

```

442     \int_incr:N\l__tag_tmpa_int

```

put the line into a seq. Attention! empty cells are dropped.

```

443     \seq_set_from_clist:Nn\l__tag_tmpa_seq { #1 }
444     \int_compare:nNnTF {\l__tag_tmpa_int}=1

```

This handles the header line. It gives the tags 2-digit numbers.

```

445     {
446     \seq_map_indexed_inline:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_seq
447     {
448       \prop_gput:Nne\g__tag_role_index_prop
449       {##2}
450       {\int_compare:nNnT{##1}<{10}{0}##1}
451     }
452   }

```

now the data lines.

```

453     {
454     \seq_set_from_clist:Nn\l__tag_tmpa_seq { #1 }

```

get the name of the child tag from the first column

```

455     \seq_pop_left:NN\l__tag_tmpa_seq\l__tag_tmpa_tl

```

get the number of the child, and store it in \l__tag_tmpb_tl

```

456     \prop_get:NoN \g__tag_role_index_prop { \l__tag_tmpa_tl } \l__tag_tmpb_tl

```


remove column 2+3

```
457         \seq_pop_left:NN\l__tag_tmpa_seq\l__tag_tmpa_tl
458         \seq_pop_left:NN\l__tag_tmpa_seq\l__tag_tmpa_tl
```

Now map over the rest. The index ##1 gives us the number of the parent, ##2 is the data.

```
459         \seq_map_indexed_inline:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_seq
460         {
461           \exp_args:Nne
462           \__tag_store_parent_child_rule:nnn {##1}{\l__tag_tmpb_tl}{ ##2 }
463         }
464     }
465 }
466 }
```

close the read handle.

```
467 \ior_close:N\g_tmpa_ior
```

The Root, Hn and mathml tags are special and need to be added explicitly

```
468 \prop_get:NnN\g__tag_role_index_prop{StructTreeRoot}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
469 \prop_gput:Nne\g__tag_role_index_prop{Root}{\l__tag_tmpa_tl}
470 \prop_get:NnN\g__tag_role_index_prop{Hn}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
471 \pdf_version_compare:NnTF < {2.0}
472 {
473   \int_step_inline:nn{6}
474   {
475     \prop_gput:Nne\g__tag_role_index_prop{H#1}{\l__tag_tmpa_tl}
476   }
477 }
478 {
479   \int_step_inline:nn{10}
480   {
481     \prop_gput:Nne\g__tag_role_index_prop{H#1}{\l__tag_tmpa_tl}
482   }

```

all mathml tags are currently handled identically with the exception of math and mtext

```
483   \prop_get:NnN\g__tag_role_index_prop {mathml}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
484   \prop_get:NnN\g__tag_role_index_prop {math}\l__tag_tmpb_tl
485   \prop_get:NnN\g__tag_role_index_prop {mtext}\l__tag_tmpc_tl
486   \prop_map_inline:Nn \g__tag_role_NS_mathml_prop
487   {
488     \prop_gput:Nno\g__tag_role_index_prop {#1} {\l__tag_tmpa_tl}
489   }
490   \prop_gput:Nno\g__tag_role_index_prop{math}{\l__tag_tmpb_tl}
491   \prop_gput:Nno\g__tag_role_index_prop{mtext}{\l__tag_tmpc_tl}
492 }
493 \sys_if_engine luatex:T
494 {
495   \prop_map_inline:Nn\g__tag_role_index_prop
496   {
497     \lua_now:e { ltx.__tag.role.index['#1']=#2 }
498   }
499 }
```

1.6.2 Retrieving the parent-child rule

This command retrieves the rule (as a number) and stores it in the `tl`-var. It assumes that the tags in `#1` and `#2` are standard tags after role mapping for which a rule exist. If the parent is one of Part, Div, NonStruct the result can be state 7, which means that a check must be repeated for the “real parent”.

TODO check temporary variables. Check if the `tl`-var should be fix.

```

500 \tl_new:N \l__tag_parent_child_check_tl
501 \sys_if_engine luatex:TF
502 {
503   \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_role_get_parent_child_rule:nnN #1 #2 #3
504     % #1 parent (string, standard tag after rolemapping!)
505     % #2 child (string, standard tag after rolemapping!)
506     % #3 tl for state
507     {
508       \tl_set:Nn #3
509         {
510           \lua_now:ef{tex.print(\int_use:N\c_document_cctab,ltx.__tag.func.role_get_parent_ch
511         }

```

Debugging messages, this can perhaps go into debug mode.

```

512   \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_loglevel_int} > { 0 }
513   {
514     \prop_get:NoNF\c__tag_role_rules_num_prop {#3} \l__tag_tmpa_tl
515     {
516       \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_tl {unknown}
517     }
518     \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpb_tl {#1}
519     \msg_note:nneee
520       { tag }
521       { role-parent-child-result }
522       { #1 }
523       { #2 }
524       {
525         #3~(=\l__tag_tmpa_tl')
526       }
527   }
528   \int_compare:nNnT {#3} = { 0 }
529   {
530     \msg_warning:nneee
531       { tag }
532       {role-parent-child-result}
533       { #1 }
534       { #2 }
535       { unknown! }
536   }
537 }
538 }
539 }
540 {
541   \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_role_get_parent_child_rule:nnN #1 #2 #3
542     % #1 parent (string, standard tag after rolemapping)
543     % #2 child (string, standard tag after rolemapping)
544     % #3 tl for state

```

```

545     {
546         \prop_get:NnN \g__tag_role_index_prop{#1}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
547         \prop_get:NnN \g__tag_role_index_prop{#2}\l__tag_tmpb_tl
548         \bool_lazy_and:nnTF
549         { ! \quark_if_no_value_p:N \l__tag_tmpa_tl }
550         { ! \quark_if_no_value_p:N \l__tag_tmpb_tl }
551     }

```

Get the rule from the intarray

```

552         \tl_set:Nn#3
553         {
554             \intarray_item:Nn
555             \g__tag_role_parent_child_intarray
556             {\l__tag_tmpa_tl\l__tag_tmpb_tl}
557         }
558     }
559     {
560         \tl_set:Nn#3 {0}
561     }

```

Debugging messages, this can perhaps go into debug mode.

```

562         \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_loglevel_int} > { 0 }
563         {
564             \prop_get:NoNF\c__tag_role_rules_num_prop {#3} \l__tag_tmpa_tl
565             {
566                 \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_tl {unknown}
567             }
568             \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpb_tl {#1}
569             \msg_note:nneee
570             { tag }
571             { role-parent-child-result }
572             { #1 }
573             { #2 }
574             {
575                 #3~(=\l__tag_tmpa_tl')
576             }
577         }
578         \int_compare:nNnT {#3} = { 0 }
579         {
580             \msg_warning:nneee
581             { tag }
582             {role-parent-child-result}
583             { #1 }
584             { #2 }
585             { unknown! }
586         }
587     }
588 }
589 \cs_generate_variant:Nn\__tag_role_get_parent_child_rule:nnN {ooN}

```

(End of definition for `__tag_role_get_parent_child_rule:nnN`.)

`__tag_role_check_parent_child:nnmN`

This command rolemaps its arguments and then calls `__tag_role_get_parent-child_rule:nnN` to retrieve the parent-child rule between both. It does not try to resolve inheritance rules of `Part`, `Div` and `NonStruct` but instead gives back the state 7. It is

then the task of the caller command to find the real parent and run the check again. In pdf 2.0 the name spaces of the tags are relevant, so we have arguments for them, but in pdf <2.0 they are ignored and can be left empty.

```

590 \pdf_version_compare:NnTF < {2.0}
591 {
592   \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_role_check_parent_child:nnnnN #1 #2 #3 #4 #5
593     % #1 parent tag,% not necessarily rolemapped, but often the case
594     % #2 NS (empty in pdf 1.x)
595     % #3 child tag, % not necessarily rolemapped, but often the case
596     % #4 NS (empty in pdf 1.x)
597     % #5 tl var: to give the result back.
598   {

```

get the standard tags through rolemapping if needed at first the parent

```

599     \prop_get:NnNTF \g__tag_role_index_prop {#1}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
600     {
601       \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_tl {#1}
602     }
603     {
604       \prop_get:NnNF \g__tag_role_rolemap_prop {#1}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
605       {
606         \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_tl {\q_no_value}
607       }
608     }

```

now the child

```

609     \prop_get:NnNTF \g__tag_role_index_prop {#3}\l__tag_tmpb_tl
610     {
611       \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpb_tl {#3}
612     }
613     {
614       \prop_get:NnNF \g__tag_role_rolemap_prop {#3}\l__tag_tmpb_tl
615       {
616         \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpb_tl {\q_no_value}
617       }
618     }

```

if we got tags for parent and child we call the checking command

```

619     \bool_lazy_and:nnTF
620     { ! \quark_if_no_value_p:N \l__tag_tmpa_tl }
621     { ! \quark_if_no_value_p:N \l__tag_tmpb_tl }
622     {
623       \__tag_role_get_parent_child_rule:ooN
624       { \l__tag_tmpa_tl }
625       { \l__tag_tmpb_tl }
626       #5
627     }
628     {
629       \tl_set:Nn #5 {0}
630       \msg_warning:nneee
631       { tag }
632       {role-parent-child-result}
633       { #1 }
634       { #3 }
635       { unknown! }

```

```

636     }
637   }
638 }

```

and now the pdf 2.0 version

```

639 {
640   \cs_new_protected:Npn \__tag_role_check_parent_child:nnnnN #1 #2 #3 #4 #5 %tag,NS,tag,NS,
641     {
642

```

If the namespace is empty, we assume a standard tag, otherwise we retrieve the rolemapping from the namespace

```

643     \tl_if_empty:nTF {#2}
644     {
645       \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_tl {#1}
646     }
647     {
648       \prop_if_exist:cTF { g__tag_role_NS_#2_prop }
649       {
650         \prop_get:cnNTF
651         { g__tag_role_NS_#2_prop }
652         {#1}
653         \l__tag_tmpa_tl
654         {
655           \tl_set:Ne \l__tag_tmpa_tl {\tl_head:N\l__tag_tmpa_tl}
656           \tl_if_empty:NT\l__tag_tmpa_tl
657           {
658             \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_tl {#1}
659           }
660         }
661         {
662           \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_tl {\q_no_value}
663         }
664       }
665       {
666         \msg_warning:nnn { tag } {role-unknown-NS} { #2}
667         \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_tl {\q_no_value}
668       }
669     }

```

and the same for the child If the namespace is empty, we assume a standard tag, otherwise we retrieve the rolemapping from the namespace

```

670     \tl_if_empty:nTF {#4}
671     {
672       \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpb_tl {#3}
673     }
674     {
675       \prop_if_exist:cTF { g__tag_role_NS_#4_prop }
676       {
677         \prop_get:cnNTF
678         { g__tag_role_NS_#4_prop }
679         {#3}
680         \l__tag_tmpb_tl
681         {
682           \tl_set:Ne \l__tag_tmpb_tl { \tl_head:N\l__tag_tmpb_tl }

```

```

683         \tl_if_empty:NT\l__tag_tmpb_tl
684         {
685             \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpb_tl {#3}
686         }
687     }
688     {
689         \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpb_tl {\q_no_value}
690     }
691 }
692 {
693     \msg_warning:nnn { tag } {role-unknown-NS} { #4}
694     \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_tmpb_tl {\q_no_value}
695 }
696 }

```

and now get the relation

```

697     \bool_lazy_and:nnTF
698     { ! \quark_if_no_value_p:N \l__tag_tmpa_tl }
699     { ! \quark_if_no_value_p:N \l__tag_tmpb_tl }
700     {
701         \__tag_role_get_parent_child_rule:ooN
702         { \l__tag_tmpa_tl }
703         { \l__tag_tmpb_tl }
704         #5
705     }
706     {
707         \tl_set:Nn #5 {0}
708         \msg_warning:nneee
709         { tag }
710         {role-parent-child-result}
711         { #2 : #1 }
712         { #4 : #3 }
713         { unknown! }
714     }
715 }
716 }
717 \cs_generate_variant:Nn\__tag_role_check_parent_child:nnnnN {oonnN,ooonN}
718 \endpackage

```

(End of definition for __tag_role_check_parent_child:nnnnN.)

\tag_check_child:nnTF

```

719 (base)\prg_new_protected_conditional:Npnn \tag_check_child:nn #1 #2 {T,F,TF}{\prg_return_true}
720 (*package)
721 \prg_set_protected_conditional:Npnn \tag_check_child:nn #1 #2 {T,F,TF} {%#1 tag, #2 NS
722 {
723     \seq_get:NN\g__tag_struct_stack_seq\l__tag_tmpa_tl
724     \__tag_struct_get_role:enNN
725     {\l__tag_tmpa_tl}
726     {rolemap}
727     \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl
728     \l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl
729     \__tag_role_check_parent_child:ooonnN
730     { \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl }
731     { \l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl }

```

```

732     {#1}{#2}
733     \l__tag_parent_child_check_tl
734 \int_compare:nNnT {\l__tag_parent_child_check_tl} = { \c__tag_role_rule_checkparent_tl }
735     {
736         \seq_get:NN\g__tag_struct_stack_seq\l__tag_tmpa_tl
737         \__tag_struct_get_role:enNN
738             {\l__tag_tmpa_tl}
739             {parentrole}
740             \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl
741             \l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl
742         \__tag_role_check_parent_child:oonnN
743             { \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl }
744             { \l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl }
745             {#1}{#2}
746         \l__tag_parent_child_check_tl
747     }
748 \int_compare:nNnTF { \l__tag_parent_child_check_tl } < {0}
749     {\prg_return_false:}
750     {\prg_return_true:}
751 }

```

(End of definition for `\tag_check_child:nTF`. This function is documented on page 179.)

1.7 Key-val user interface

The user interface uses the key `add-new-tag`, which takes either a keyval list as argument, or a tag/role.

```

tag (rolemap-key)
tag-namespace (rolemap-key)
role (rolemap-key)
role-namespace (rolemap-key)
role/new-tag (setup-key)
add-new-tag (deprecated)
752 \keys_define:nn { __tag / tag-role }
753     {
754         ,tag .tl_set:N = \l__tag_role_tag_tmpa_tl
755         ,tag-namespace .tl_set:N = \l__tag_role_tag_namespace_tmpa_tl
756         ,role .tl_set:N = \l__tag_role_role_tmpa_tl
757         ,role-namespace .tl_set:N = \l__tag_role_role_namespace_tmpa_tl
758     }
759
760 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
761     {
762         role/mathml-tags .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_role_add_mathml_bool
763         ,role/new-tag .code:n =
764         {
765             \keys_set_known:nnnN
766                 {__tag/tag-role}
767             {
768                 tag-namespace=user,
769                 role-namespace=, %so that we can test for it.
770                 #1
771             }{__tag/tag-role}\l__tag_tmpa_tl
772             \tl_if_empty:NF \l__tag_tmpa_tl
773             {
774                 \exp_args:NNno \seq_set_split:Nnn \l__tag_tmpa_seq { / } {\l__tag_tmpa_tl/}
775                 \tl_set:Ne \l__tag_role_tag_tmpa_tl { \seq_item:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_seq {1} }
776                 \tl_set:Ne \l__tag_role_role_tmpa_tl { \seq_item:Nn \l__tag_tmpa_seq {2} }

```

```

777     }
778     \tl_if_empty:NT \l__tag_role_role_namespace_tmpa_tl
779     {
780         \prop_get:NoNTF
781         \g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop
782         { \l__tag_role_role_tmpa_tl }
783         \l__tag_role_role_namespace_tmpa_tl
784         {
785             \prop_get:NoNF
786             \g__tag_role_NS_prop
787             { \l__tag_role_role_namespace_tmpa_tl }
788             \l__tag_tmp_unused_tl
789             {
790                 \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_role_role_namespace_tmpa_tl {user}
791             }
792         }
793     }
794     \tl_set:Nn \l__tag_role_role_namespace_tmpa_tl {user}
795 }
796 }
797 \pdf_version_compare:NnTF < {2.0}
798 {
799     %TODO add check for emptyness?
800     \__tag_role_add_tag:oo
801     { \l__tag_role_tag_tmpa_tl }
802     { \l__tag_role_role_tmpa_tl }
803 }
804 {
805     \__tag_role_add_tag:oooo
806     { \l__tag_role_tag_tmpa_tl }
807     { \l__tag_role_tag_namespace_tmpa_tl }
808     { \l__tag_role_role_tmpa_tl }
809     { \l__tag_role_role_namespace_tmpa_tl }
810 }
811 }
812 ,role/map-tags .choice:
813 ,role/map-tags/false .code:n = { \socket_assign_plug:n { tag/struct/tag } {latex-
tags} }
814 ,role/map-tags/pdf .code:n = { \socket_assign_plug:n { tag/struct/tag } {pdf-
tags} }
815 ,role/user-NS .code:n =
816 {
817     \pdf_version_compare:NnF < {2.0}
818     {
819         \pdf_string_from_unicode:nnN{utf8/string}{https://www.latex-project.org/ns/local/#1}
820         \tl_if_empty:NF \l__tag_tmpa_str
821         {
822             \pdfdict_gput:nne
823             {g__tag_role/Namespace_user_dict}
824             {NS}
825             {\l__tag_tmpa_str}
826         }
827     }
828 }

```


deprecated names

```
829     , mathml-tags .bool_gset:N = \g__tag_role_add_mathml_bool
830     , add-new-tag .meta:n = {role/new-tag={#1}}
831   }
832 \end{package}
```

(End of definition for tag (rolemap-key) and others. These functions are documented on page 179.)

Part XI

The tagpdf-space module

Code related to real space chars

Part of the tagpdf package

`activate/space` (setup-key)
`interwordspace` (deprecated)

This key allows to activate/deactivate the real space chars if the engine supports it. The allowed values are `true`, `on`, `false`, `off`. The old name of the key `interwordspace` is still supported but deprecated.

`show-spaces` (deprecated)

This key is deprecated. Use `debug/show=spaces` instead. This key works only with luatex and shows with small red bars where spaces have been inserted. This is only for debugging and is not completely reliable (and change affect other literals and tagging), so it should be used with care.

```
1 <@@=tag>
2 <*header>
3 \ProvidesExplPackage {tagpdf-space-code} {2025-06-27} {0.99s}
4 {part of tagpdf - code related to real space chars}
5 </header>
```

1 Code for interword spaces

The code is engine/backend dependent. Basically only pdftex and luatex support real space chars. Most of the code for luatex which uses attributes is in the lua code, here are only the keys.

`activate/spaces` (setup-key)
`interwordspace` (deprecated)
`show-spaces` (deprecated)

```
6 <*package>
7 \bool_new:N\l__tag_showspaces_bool
8 \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
9 {
10   activate/spaces .choice:,
11   activate/spaces/true .code:n =
12     { \msg_warning:nne {tag}{sys-no-interwordspace}{\c_sys_engine_str} },
13   activate/spaces/false .code:n=
14     { \msg_warning:nne {tag}{sys-no-interwordspace}{\c_sys_engine_str} },
15   activate/spaces .default:n = true,
16   debug/show/spaces .code:n = {\bool_set_true:N \l__tag_showspaces_bool},
17   debug/show/spacesOff .code:n = {\bool_set_false:N \l__tag_showspaces_bool},
```

deprecated versions:

```
18   interwordspace .choices:nn = {true,on}{\keys_set:nn{__tag/setup}{activate/spaces={true}}},
19   interwordspace .choices:nn = {false,off}{\keys_set:nn{__tag/setup}{activate/spaces={false}}},
20   interwordspace .default:n = {true},
```

```

21 show-spaces .choice:,
22 show-spaces/true .meta:n = {debug/show=spaces},
23 show-spaces/false .meta:n = {debug/show=spacesOff},
24 show-spaces .default:n = true
25 }
26 \sys_if_engine_pdftex:T
27 {
28   \sys_if_output_pdf:TF
29   {
30     \pdfglyphtounicode{space}{0020}
31     \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
32     {
33       activate/spaces/true .code:n = { \AddToHook{shipout/firstpage}[tagpdf/space]{\p
34       activate/spaces/false .code:n = { \RemoveFromHook{shipout/firstpage}[tagpdf/spac
35       activate/spaces .default:n = true,
36     }
37   }
38   {
39     \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
40     {
41       activate/spaces .choices:nn = { true, false }
42       { \msg_warning:nnn {tag}{sys-no-interwordspace}{dvi} },
43       activate/spaces .default:n = true,
44     }
45   }
46 }
47
48
49 \sys_if_engine_luatex:T
50 {
51   \keys_define:nn { __tag / setup }
52   {
53     activate/spaces .choice:,
54     activate/spaces/true .code:n =
55     {
56       \bool_gset_true:N \g__tag_active_space_bool
57       \lua_now:e{!tx.__tag.func.markspaceon()}
58     },
59     activate/spaces/false .code:n =
60     {
61       \bool_gset_false:N \g__tag_active_space_bool
62       \lua_now:e{!tx.__tag.func.markspaceoff()}
63     },
64     activate/spaces .default:n = true,
65     debug/show/spaces .code:n =
66     { \lua_now:e{!tx.__tag.trace.showspace=true} },
67     debug/show/spacesOff .code:n =
68     { \lua_now:e{!tx.__tag.trace.showspace=nil} },
69   }
70 }

```

(End of definition for activate/spaces (setup-key), interwordspace (deprecated), and show-spaces (deprecated). These functions are documented on page ??.)

`__tag_fakespace:` For luatex we need a command for the fake space as equivalent of the pdftex primitive.

```

71 \sys_if_engine_luatex:T
72 {
73   \cs_new_protected:Nn \__tag_fakespace:
74   {
75     \group_begin:
76     \lua_now:e{!tx.__tag.func.fakespace()}
77     \skip_horizontal:n{\c_zero_skip}
78     \group_end:
79   }
80 }

```

We need also a command to interrupt the insertion of real space chars in places where we want to insert manually special spaces. In pdftex this can be done with `\pdfinterwordspaceoff` and `\pdfinterwordspaceon`. These commands insert what-sits and this mean they act globally. In luatex a attribute is used to this effect, for consistency this is also set globally.

The off command sets the attributes in luatex.

```

\tag_spacechar_on: 81 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_spacechar_off: {}
\tag_spacechar_off: 82 \cs_new_protected:Npn \tag_spacechar_on: {}
83
84 \sys_if_engine_luatex:T
85 {
86   \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_spacechar_off:
87   {
88     \lua_now:e
89     {
90       tex.setattribute
91       (
92         "global",
93         luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_interwordspaceOff_attr,
94         1
95       )
96     }
97   }
98   \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_spacechar_on:
99   {
100    \lua_now:e
101    {
102      tex.setattribute
103      (
104        "global",
105        luatexbase.attributes.g__tag_interwordspaceOff_attr,
106        -2147483647
107      )
108    }
109  }
110 }
111 \sys_if_engine_pdftex:T
112 {
113   \sys_if_output_pdf:T
114   {
115     \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_spacechar_off:
116     {

```

```
117         \pdfinterwordspaceoff
118     }
119     \cs_set_protected:Npn \tag_spacechar_on:
120     {
121         \pdfinterwordspaceon
122     }
123 }
124 }
```

```
125 </package>
```

(End of definition for `_tag_fakespace:`, `\tag_spacechar_on:`, and `\tag_spacechar_off:`. These functions are documented on page ??.)

Index

The italic numbers denote the pages where the corresponding entry is described, numbers underlined point to the definition, all others indicate the places where it is used.

Symbols

`\` 10, 23, 27, 28, 44, 49, 50, 51, 56,
58, 60, 67, 70, 72, 78, 80, 93, 96, 97,
106, 107, 113, 114, 166, 539, 602, 610
`_` 429, 440

A

`activate_`(`setup-key`) 39, 285
`activate-all` (deprecated) (key) 1
`activate-mc` (deprecated) (key) 1
`activate-struct` (deprecated) (key) 1
`activate-tree` (deprecated) (key) 1
`activate/all` (key) 1, 218
`activate/mc` (key) 1, 218
`activate/socket_`(`setup-key`) 285
`activate/softhyphen` (key) 1, 252
`activate/space_`(`setup-key`) 202
`activate/spaces` (key) 1
`activate/spaces_`(`setup-key`) 6
`activate/struct` (key) 1, 218
`activate/struct-dest` (key) 1, 218
`activate/tagunmarked` (key) 1, 249
`activate/tree` (key) 1, 218
`actualtext` (key) 1, 740
`actualtext_`(`mc-key`) 80, 238, 384
`add-new-tag_`(deprecated) 752
`add-new-tag_`(`setup-key`) 179
`\AddToHook` 13, 16, 33, 44, 57, 303, 387,
520, 522, 523, 527, 531, 538, 567, 617
`AF` (key) 1, 938
`AFinline` (key) 1, 938
`AFinline-o` (key) 1, 938
`AFref` (key) 1, 938
`alt` (key) 1, 740
`alt_`(`mc-key`) 80, 238, 384
`artifact_`(`mc-key`) 80, 238, 384
artifact-bool internal commands:
 `__artifact-bool` 182
artifact-type internal commands:
 `__artifact-type` 182
`\AssignSocketPlug` 597, 598, 636, 643
`\AssignTaggingSocketPlug` 751, 752
`\AtBeginDocument` 731
`attr-unknown` 20, 84
`attribute` (key) 1, 1551
`attribute-class` (key) 1, 1517

B

benchmark commands:
 `\benchmark_tic`: 619, 621
 `\benchmark_toc`: 622
bool commands:
 `\bool_gset_eq:NN`
 655, 670, 682, 700, 759, 773
 `\bool_gset_false:N`
 61, 221, 372, 656, 683, 760
 `\bool_gset_true:N`
 36, 56, 87, 175, 313, 1010
 `\bool_if:NTF` 9, 13, 18, 31, 40, 40,
 68, 75, 80, 85, 91, 96, 111, 135, 146,
 196, 203, 208, 228, 248, 264, 265,
 272, 281, 314, 323, 335, 339, 351,
 389, 426, 437, 451, 453, 470, 478,
 484, 503, 510, 569, 595, 650, 665,
 677, 695, 754, 768, 1188, 1220, 1251
 `\bool_if:nTF` 489
 `\bool_lazy_all:nTF` 240
 `\bool_lazy_and:nnTF`
 274, 284, 305, 309,
 355, 373, 548, 619, 697, 753, 786, 1013
 `\bool_new:N` 7, 16, 20,
 21, 35, 73, 82, 83, 84, 85, 85, 86, 88,
 90, 92, 93, 94, 255, 323, 324, 646, 1009
 `\bool_set_false:N`
 17, 163, 164, 165, 176, 187, 188,
 189, 222, 344, 398, 606, 649, 676, 753
 `\bool_set_true:N` 16, 89, 91, 173, 174,
 175, 198, 199, 200, 256, 346, 397, 605
box commands:
 `\box_dp:N` 180, 184
 `\box_ht:N` 170
 `\box_new:N` 77, 78
 `\box_set_dp:Nn` 178, 180
 `\box_set_eq:NN` 193
 `\box_set_ht:Nn` 177, 179
 `\box_use_drop:N` 182, 186
`\boxmaxdepth` 93, 181

C

`c@g` internal commands:
 `\c@g__tag_MCID_abs_int`
 11, 15, 28, 37, 50, 57, 60, 68, 74,
 132, 138, 178, 242, 245, 288, 295, 346
 `\c@g__tag_parenttree_obj_int` 155, 518

\c@g__tag_struct_abs_int	6, 18, 40, 58, 91, 114, 115, 118, 123, 126, 149, 166, 259, 385, 568, 745, 758, 803, 815, 829, 845, 860, 868, 922, 933, 952, 955, 960, 996, 998, 1003, 1015, 1017, 1022, 1113, 1124, 1125, 1126, 1127, 1128, 1129, 1131, 1133, 1139, 1144, 1151, 1154, 1164, 1172, 1176, 1191, 1204, 1214, 1227, 1230, 1245, 1246, 1248, 1259, 1544, 1547, 1595	111, 117, 120, 122, 126, 137, 142, 147, 153, 163, 167, 169, 171, 172, 179, 189, 193, 209, 210, 211, 212, 213, 213, 214, 233, 245, 246, 255, 259, 260, 263, 266, 266, 277, 281, 282, 285, 286, 292, 292, 295, 298, 302, 309, 318, 318, 322, 322, 323, 332, 333, 337, 341, 345, 349, 349, 351, 353, 357, 370, 376, 378, 385, 393, 397, 411, 413, 416, 417, 423, 434, 435, 446, 480, 503, 509, 516, 521, 523, 530, 541, 550, 558, 565, 572, 573, 580, 592, 596, 613, 614, 615, 615, 616, 616, 617, 640, 647, 652, 661, 674, 690, 749, 765, 873, 881, 894, 907, 940, 968, 1113, 1114, 1115, 1312, 1353, 1405, 1418, 1438, 1442, 1446, 1450, 1456, 1475, 1499
catalog-supplemental-file (key) ...	1093	
cctab commands:		
\c_document_cctab	49, 54, 75, 155, 510	
\chapter	190 , 357 , 375	
check commands:		
check_parent_child_rules	974	
check_update_stashed	974	
clist commands:		
\clist_const:Nn	79, 80	\cs_set:Nn
\clist_if_empty:NTF	1556	\cs_set:Npn
\clist_map_inline:nn ...	105, 437, 919	\cs_set_eq:NN
\clist_new:N	75	66, 80, 81, 82, 138, 139, 140, 141,
\clist_set:Nn	1521, 1555	142, 143, 144, 145, 146, 147, 180,
color commands:		181, 192, 206, 215, 216, 224, 225,
\color_select:n	429, 440	235, 236, 237, 238, 378, 379, 380,
cs commands:		381, 621, 622, 708, 709, 710, 711,
\cs:w	1427, 1431	717, 718, 722, 723, 724, 725, 782, 783
\cs_end:	1427, 1431	\cs_set_protected:Nn
\cs_generate_variant:Nn .....		.. 169, 216, 241, 359, 365, 1269, 1270
.....	44, 79, 97, 98, 99, 100, 101,	\cs_set_protected:Npn
.....	102, 103, 104, 105, 106, 107, 107,	9, 15,
.....	114, 115, 116, 118, 126, 134, 149,	16, 22, 29, 35, 38, 40, 48, 49, 52, 58,
.....	150, 151, 152, 153, 153, 154, 155,	63, 65, 71, 73, 78, 83, 83, 86, 94, 98,
.....	163, 164, 168, 181, 212, 226, 232,	102, 112, 115, 119, 143, 159, 168,
.....	253, 265, 265, 276, 281, 297, 317,	182, 193, 220, 228, 240, 246, 267,
.....	322, 332, 589, 651, 699, 717, 939,	283, 299, 301, 305, 359, 363, 367,
.....	967, 988, 1403, 1415, 1455, 1484, 1505	371, 1117, 1118, 1306, 1314, 1355, 1407
\cs_gset_eq:NN	414	\cs_to_str:N
\cs_if_exist:NTF ..	231, 571, 619, 619	.. 12, 18, 25, 32, 38, 43, 61, 62, 68, 69
\cs_if_exist_p:N ..	357, 360, 375, 378	
\cs_if_exist_use:NTF	418, 1409	
\cs_if_free:NTF	48	
\cs_new:Nn	83,	
.....	104, 109, 131, 136, 293, 427, 428, 429	
\cs_new:Npn	9, 15, 23, 27, 92,	
.....	117, 122, 156, 167, 229, 229, 233,	
.....	237, 383, 546, 554, 560, 566, 1399, 1485	
\cs_new_eq:NN	37	
\cs_new_protected:Nn		
.....	73, 127, 167, 296, 430, 434	
\cs_new_protected:Npn ..	13, 17, 20,	
.....	22, 23, 30, 31, 36, 42, 43, 45, 60, 61,	
.....	63, 65, 67, 78, 79, 80, 81, 81, 82, 84,	
.....	85, 86, 93, 95, 102, 107, 107, 108,	

D

debug/log (key)	1 , 236
debug/show (key)	235
debug/structures_␣(show-key) ...	40 , 254
debug/uncompress (key)	236
\DebugSocketsOn	43
\DeclareOption	37, 38
dim commands:	
\c_max_dim	169, 194
\c_zero_dim	177, 178, 179
\documentclass	16
\DocumentMetadata	15

E

E (key)	1 , 740 , 915
---------------	---

<code>\endinput</code>	22	int commands:	
<code>\ERRORusetaggingsocket</code>	106, 121	<code>\int_abs:n</code>	172
<code>exclude-header-footer_□</code> (deprecated)	703	<code>\int_case:nnTF</code>	99, 114, 347
exp commands:		<code>\int_compare:nNnTF</code>	
<code>\exp_args:Ne</code>	122, 548	22, 58, 70, 98, 116, 124, 125, 132,	
<code>\exp_args:NNe</code>	86, 89, 195, 215	142, 148, 157, 170, 173, 173, 261,	
<code>\exp_args:Nne</code> ..	79, 337, 341, 427, 461	311, 341, 360, 387, 390, 418, 424,	
<code>\exp_args:NNno</code>	774	444, 450, 511, 512, 518, 525, 528,	
<code>\exp_args:No</code>	291, 326	532, 544, 552, 553, 560, 562, 567,	
<code>\exp_last_unbraced:Ne</code> ..	99, 102, 109	575, 578, 582, 601, 637, 734, 748, 1155	
<code>\exp_last_unbraced:No</code> ..	135, 138,	<code>\int_compare:nTF</code>	
152, 154, 157, 159, 224, 225, 238,		180, 458, 1537, 1539, 1541, 1565, 1591	
239, 588, 592, 612, 615, 623, 626, 1295		<code>\int_compare_p:nNn</code>	758
<code>\exp_not:n</code>	185, 204	<code>\int_decr:N</code>	170, 195
		<code>\int_eval:n</code>	118, 138, 166, 197,
		396, 603, 611, 755, 760, 763, 960,	
		1003, 1022, 1125, 1126, 1127, 1128,	
		1129, 1245, 1246, 1248, 1259, 1547	
		<code>\int_gincr:N</code> ..	178, 242, 288, 295,
		343, 347, 351, 355, 361, 365, 369,	
		373, 518, 946, 1082, 1099, 1113, 1124	
		<code>\int_gset:Nn</code>	7, 82, 158
		<code>\int_if_zero:nTF</code>	
		.....	170, 171, 195, 196, 599, 607
		<code>\int_incr:N</code>	93, 162, 186, 442
		<code>\int_new:N</code>	6, 76, 78,
		81, 95, 155, 158, 326, 327, 328, 329, 938	
		<code>\int_rand:n</code> ..	61, 62, 64, 66, 68, 70, 71
		<code>\int_set:Nn</code>	237, 240, 243, 244, 245
		<code>\int_step_inline:mn</code>	473, 479
		<code>\int_step_inline:nnn</code>	25, 91, 259
		<code>\int_step_inline:nnnn</code>	
		.....	149, 174, 177, 200, 443, 449
		<code>\int_to_arabic:n</code>	172, 174
		<code>\int_to_Hex:n</code> ..	61, 62, 64, 66, 68, 70, 71
		<code>\int_use:N</code>	11, 15, 18, 28, 37,
		40, 49, 50, 54, 57, 58, 60, 68, 74, 75,	
		100, 115, 123, 130, 132, 155, 161,	
		178, 185, 204, 234, 241, 245, 259,	
		261, 346, 385, 429, 440, 510, 533,	
		549, 550, 558, 559, 568, 745, 803,	
		815, 829, 845, 860, 868, 922, 933,	
		949, 952, 955, 996, 998, 1015, 1017,	
		1086, 1089, 1103, 1107, 1133, 1139,	
		1144, 1151, 1154, 1176, 1191, 1204,	
		1214, 1227, 1230, 1485, 1544, 1595	
		<code>\int_zero:N</code>	90, 105, 430
		intarray commands:	
		<code>\intarray_gset:Nnn</code>	
		.....	397, 406, 421, 421, 425
		<code>\intarray_item:Nn</code>	423, 426, 554
		<code>\intarray_new:Nn</code>	390, 413
		interwordspace _□ (deprecated)	202, 6
F			
file commands:			
<code>\file_if_exist:nTF</code>	322		
<code>\file_input:n</code>	268		
firstkid (key)	1, 740		
flag commands:			
<code>\flag_clear:n</code>	239		
<code>\flag_height:n</code>	136, 251		
<code>\flag_new:n</code>	134		
<code>\flag_raise:n</code>	252		
<code>\fontencoding</code>	6		
<code>\fontfamily</code>	6		
<code>\fontseries</code>	6		
<code>\fontshape</code>	6		
<code>\fontsize</code>	6		
<code>\footins</code>	574, 593		
G			
group commands:			
<code>\group_begin:</code>	67, 75, 173,		
311, 945, 1037, 1045, 1080, 1097, 1123			
<code>\group_end:</code>	74, 78, 213,		
350, 963, 1041, 1051, 1090, 1108, 1265			
H			
<code>\halign</code>	43		
hbox commands:			
<code>\hbox_set:Nn</code>	171, 172		
hook commands:			
<code>\hook_gput_code:nnn</code> ..	7, 11, 33, 57,		
66, 80, 156, 239, 288, 289, 353, 371,			
387, 391, 798, 807, 816, 825, 834,			
843, 851, 860, 868, 877, 887, 900,			
910, 923, 933, 946, 956, 969, 978, 991			
<code>\hook_new:n</code>	348		
<code>\hook_use:n</code>	353		
I			
<code>\IfPDFManagementActiveF</code>	6		
<code>\ignorespaces</code>	39		

ior commands:	
\ior_close:N	330, 467
\ior_map_inline:Nn	326, 438
\ior_open:Nn	324, 433, 436
\g_tmpa_ior	324, 326, 330, 433, 436, 438, 467
iow commands:	
\iow_newline:	205, 303
\iow_term:n	198, 211, 214, 220, 224, 241, 355, 359, 363, 367, 371, 375, 379
K	
kernel internal commands:	
__kernel_pdfdict_name:n	45
\g__kernel_pdfmanagement_end_-run_code_tl	1011
keys commands:	
\keys_define:nn	8, 31, 34, 39, 51, 131, 143, 182, 195, 203, 219, 238, 246, 255, 291, 385, 394, 403, 410, 416, 609, 703, 740, 752, 760, 776, 915, 989, 1022, 1054, 1076, 1093, 1506, 1517, 1551
\keys_set:nn	10, 18, 18, 19, 128, 187, 190, 296, 318, 321, 338, 342, 428, 1017, 1087, 1149
\keys_set_known:nnnN	765
L	
label (key)	<u>1</u> , <u>740</u>
\label	<u>12</u>
label _␣ (mc-key)	<u>80</u> , <u>238</u> , <u>384</u>
lang (key)	<u>1</u> , <u>740</u>
lang _␣ (mc-key=)	<u>238</u>
legacy commands:	
\legacy_if:nTF	472, 475, 476
\llap	429
log (deprecated) (key)	<u>236</u>
ltx. internal commands:	
ltx.__tag.func.alloctag	<u>312</u>
ltx.__tag.func.check_parent_-child_rules	<u>974</u>
ltx.__tag.func.fakespace	<u>491</u>
ltx.__tag.func.fill_parent_tree_-line	<u>866</u>
ltx.__tag.func.get_num_from	<u>321</u>
ltx.__tag.func.get_tag_from	<u>340</u>
ltx.__tag.func.mark_page_-elements	<u>692</u>
ltx.__tag.func.mark_shipout	<u>849</u>
ltx.__tag.func.markspaceoff	<u>557</u>
ltx.__tag.func.markspaceon	<u>557</u>
ltx.__tag.func.mc_insert_kids	<u>629</u>
ltx.__tag.func.mc_num_of_kids	<u>370</u>
ltx.__tag.func.output_num_from	<u>321</u>
ltx.__tag.func.output_parenttree	<u>866</u>
ltx.__tag.func.output_tag_from	<u>340</u>
ltx.__tag.func.role_get_parent_-child_rule	<u>967</u>
ltx.__tag.func.space_chars_-shipout	<u>589</u>
ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_data	<u>355</u>
ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_in_page	<u>673</u>
ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_kid	<u>364</u>
ltx.__tag.func.store_mc_label	<u>360</u>
ltx.__tag.func.store_struct_-mcabs	<u>661</u>
ltx.__tag.func.update_mc_-attributes	<u>681</u>
ltx.__tag.tables.role_tag_-attribute	<u>310</u>
ltx.__tag.trace.log	<u>224</u>
ltx.__tag.trace.show_all_mc_data	<u>281</u>
ltx.__tag.trace.show_mc_data	<u>266</u>
ltx.__tag.trace.show_prop	<u>241</u>
ltx.__tag.trace.show_seq	<u>232</u>
ltx.__tag.trace.show_struct_data	<u>287</u>
lua commands:	
\lua_escape:n	32
\lua_now:n	8, 12, 15, 18, 25, 25, 26, 32, 35, 38, 42, 43, 49, 50, 54, 57, 59, 61, 62, 62, 66, 68, 68, 69, 73, 76, 86, 87, 87, 88, 96, 100, 109, 111, 120, 133, 137, 138, 152, 158, 161, 173, 181, 189, 230, 237, 244, 252, 268, 282, 303, 317, 327, 399, 408, 497, 510, 791
M	
\MakeLinkTarget	<u>147</u>
mathml (key)	<u>1</u> , <u>938</u>
\maxdimen	<u>192</u>
mc-current	<u>19</u> , <u>16</u>
mc-current _␣ (show-key)	<u>40</u> , <u>143</u>
mc-data _␣ (show-key)	<u>40</u> , <u>131</u>
mc-label-unknown	<u>19</u> , <u>9</u>
mc-marks _␣ (show-key)	<u>40</u> , <u>203</u>
mc-nested	<u>19</u> , <u>6</u>
mc-not-open	<u>19</u> , <u>13</u>
mc-popped	<u>19</u> , <u>14</u>
mc-pushed	<u>19</u> , <u>14</u>
mc-tag-missing	<u>19</u> , <u>8</u>
mc-used-twice	<u>19</u> , <u>12</u>
\MessageBreak	10, 14, 15
msg commands:	
\msg_error:nn	299, 320, 491, 1161
\msg_error:nnn	336, 347, 355, 366, 477, 1531, 1571

<code>\msg_error:nnnnn</code>	546, 555	<code>page/exclude-header-footer_(setup-</code>	
<code>\msg_info:nnn</code>		<code>key)</code>	42, 703
.....	134, 172, 313, 325, 333, 389, 393	<code>page/tabsorder (key)</code>	1, 254
<code>\msg_info:nnnn</code>	343, 362, 402	<code>para-flattened_(deprecated)</code>	394
<code>\msg_line_context:</code> ..	93, 97, 107,	<code>para-hook-count-wrong</code>	20, 225
.....	114, 506, 507, 539, 543, 547, 603, 611	<code>para/flattened_(tool-key)</code>	394
<code>\g_msg_module_name_prop</code>	24, 28	<code>para/maintag_(setup-key)</code>	394
<code>\g_msg_module_type_prop</code>	27	<code>para/maintag_(tool-key)</code>	394
<code>\msg_new:nnn</code>	7, 8, 9,	<code>para/tag_(setup-key)</code>	394
.....	12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 22, 24, 25, 32, 35,	<code>para/tag_(tool-key)</code>	394
	36, 38, 40, 42, 47, 54, 65, 74, 85, 86,	<code>para/tagging_(setup-key)</code>	41, 394
	87, 88, 89, 90, 92, 94, 104, 111, 164,	<code>para/tagging_(tool-key)</code>	394
	213, 215, 216, 217, 218, 219, 220,	<code>\PARALABEL</code>	496
	222, 506, 507, 537, 541, 545, 597, 605	<code>paratag_(deprecated)</code>	394
<code>\msg_new:nnnn</code>	225	<code>paratagging_(deprecated)</code>	41, 394
<code>\msg_note:nn</code>	29, 199	<code>paratagging-show_(deprecated)</code> ..	41, 394
<code>\msg_note:nnn</code>		<code>parent (key)</code>	1, 740
.....	161, 178, 527, 534, 569, 577	<code>pdf commands:</code>	
<code>\msg_note:nnnn</code>		<code>\pdf_activate_indexed_structure_-</code>	
.....	128, 184, 203, 513, 520, 554, 562, 605	<code>destination:</code>	311
<code>\msg_note:nnnnn</code>	519, 569	<code>\pdf_bdc:nn</code>	237
<code>\msg_redirect_name:nnn</code>	542	<code>\pdf_bdc_shipout:nn</code>	238
<code>\msg_show_item_unbraced:n</code>	276	<code>\pdf_bmc:n</code>	235
<code>\msg_show_item_unbraced:nn</code>	267	<code>\l_pdf_current_structure_-</code>	
<code>\msg_term:nnnnnn</code>	261, 270	<code>destination_tl</code>	309
<code>\msg_warning:nn</code>	24, 222	<code>\pdf_emc:</code>	236
<code>\msg_warning:nnn</code>		<code>\pdf_name_from_unicode_e:n</code>	
.....	12, 14, 42, 45, 54, 242, 248,	.....	122, 132, 137, 185,
	306, 321, 329, 374, 382, 407, 431,		190, 198, 278, 1049, 1502, 1525, 1561
	666, 693, 891, 904, 1348, 1367, 1393	<code>\pdf_object_if_exist:n</code>	96
<code>\msg_warning:nnnn</code>	458, 590, 762	<code>\pdf_object_if_exist:nTF</code> ..	993, 1058
<code>\msg_warning:nnnnn</code>		<code>\pdf_object_new:n</code>	
.....	126, 175, 530, 580, 630, 708	.....	112, 34, 36, 154, 262, 310, 321
<code>\msg_warning:nnnnnn</code>	146	<code>\pdf_object_new_indexed:nn</code>	31, 1130
		<code>\pdf_object_ref:n</code> 112, 56, 97, 131,	
		135, 159, 192, 318, 335, 996, 1060, 1107	
		<code>\pdf_object_ref_indexed:nn</code>	
		.....	57, 74, 96, 126,
			211, 273, 289, 432, 453, 514, 542, 1401
		<code>\pdf_object_ref_last:</code>	112,
		104, 118, 124, 312, 1466, 1472, 1580	
		<code>\pdf_object_unnamed_write:nn</code> ..	
		.....	100, 111, 120, 304, 1458, 1575
		<code>\pdf_object_write:nnn</code>	
		.....	257, 281, 311, 330, 337, 342
		<code>\pdf_object_write_indexed:nnnn</code> .	
		.....	139, 467
		<code>\pdf_pageobject_ref:n</code> ..	239, 504, 532
		<code>\pdf_string_from_unicode:nnN</code>	42, 819
		<code>\pdf_uncompress:</code>	246, 248
		<code>\pdf_version_compare:NnTF</code>	
		.....	20, 81, 154, 154, 177, 227,
			257, 324, 351, 431, 471, 590, 797, 817

N

<code>\n</code>	1001
<code>namespace_(rolemap-key)</code>	179
<code>new-tag</code>	20, 215
<code>newattribute_(deprecated)</code>	113, 1499
<code>\newcommand</code>	602, 603
<code>\newcounter</code>	8
<code>\NewDocumentCommand</code>	6,
.....	23, 29, 34, 40, 46, 51, 56, 126, 316, 607
<code>\newmarks</code>	13
<code>\NewSocketPlug</code>	586, 592, 629, 637
<code>\NewTaggingSocketPlug</code>	735, 741
<code>no-struct-dest (deprecated) (key)</code>	1
<code>\nointerlineskip</code>	185

P

<code>\PackageError</code>	8
<code>\PackageWarning</code>	22, 564

pdfannot commands:

- \pdfannot_dict_put:nnn 98, 894, 917, 940, 963, 985
- \pdfannot_link_ref_last: 904, 927, 950, 973, 995

pdfdict commands:

- \pdfdict_gput:nnn 38, 45, 53, 187, 276, 334, 822
- \pdfdict_if_empty:nTF 328
- \pdfdict_new:n 18, 35, 37
- \pdfdict_put:nnn 1038, 1039, 1046, 1047, 1048, 1081, 1098
- \pdfdict_use:n 283, 332, 339

\pdffakespace 41, 314

pdffile commands:

- \pdffile_embed_file:nnn 106, 1083, 1100
- \pdffile_embed_stream:nnN . 939, 947
- \pdffile_embed_stream:nnn 99

\pdfglyptounicode 30

\pdfinterwordsoff 204, 117

\pdfinterwordspaceon 204, 33, 121

pdfmanagement commands:

- \pdfmanagement_add:nnn 52, 70, 71, 256, 258, 260, 393, 1104
- \pdfmanagement_remove:nn 262

phoneme (key) 740

prg commands:

- \prg_do_nothing: 37, 82, 102, 117, 378, 379, 380, 381, 414, 722, 723, 724, 725
- \prg_generate_conditional_variant:Nnn 96
- \prg_new_conditional:Nnn ... 68, 226
- \prg_new_conditional:Npnn 233, 257, 272, 282, 481, 487, 498
- \prg_new_eq_conditional:NNn . 82, 233
- \prg_new_protected_conditional:Npnn 719
- \prg_replicate:nn 171
- \prg_return_false: 78, 230, 234, 252, 263, 266, 279, 289, 484, 496, 502, 749
- \prg_return_true: .. 79, 229, 249, 262, 276, 286, 485, 495, 501, 719, 750
- \prg_set_conditional:Npnn 238
- \prg_set_protected_conditional:Npnn 721

process commands:

- process_softyphen_pre_{UUUU}process_softyphen_post 919

\ProcessOptions 39

prop commands:

- \prop_clear:N 176
- \prop_count:N 203
- \prop_gclear:N 1028
- \prop_get:NnN 127, 144, 145, 177, 198, 214, 268, 299, 456, 468, 470, 483, 484, 485, 546, 547, 603, 604
- \prop_get:NnNTF 44, 96, 130, 137, 144, 158, 183, 199, 205, 219, 236, 294, 295, 304, 324, 339, 358, 395, 405, 419, 450, 514, 564, 599, 604, 609, 614, 650, 677, 703, 719, 770, 780, 785, 883, 896, 1198, 1296, 1362, 1421, 1459, 1529, 1569, 1573
- \prop_gput:Nnn 24, 26, 27, 28, 31, 56, 88, 90, 91, 97, 98, 99, 100, 100, 101, 103, 110, 112, 113, 116, 119, 121, 122, 141, 145, 269, 272, 286, 291, 383, 448, 452, 454, 455, 469, 475, 481, 488, 490, 491, 744, 1029, 1031, 1247, 1258, 1333, 1378, 1501, 1533, 1580
- \prop_gremove:Nn 137, 165, 1032
- \prop_gset_eq:NN 164, 1244
- \prop_gset_from_keyval:Nn 1002
- \prop_if_exist:NTF 174, 209, 234, 320, 448, 648, 675, 1318, 1359
- \prop_if_exist_p:N 755
- \prop_if_in:NnTF 94
- \prop_item:Nn 41, 98, 99, 102, 102, 109, 115, 145, 262, 551, 1255, 1578, 1585
- \prop_map_function:NN 265
- \prop_map_inline:Nn 267, 272, 293, 326, 363, 381, 416, 486, 495, 1015
- \prop_map_tokens:Nn 344
- \prop_new:N .. 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 11, 25, 33, 72, 138, 162, 1001, 1126, 1494, 1497
- \prop_new_linked:N 17, 84, 89, 91, 139, 1495
- \prop_put:Nnn 101, 188
- \prop_show:N 67, 95, 147, 1241, 1262, 1547, 1574

property commands:

- \property_new:nnnn 121, 124, 128, 131, 135
- \property_record:nn 58, 110
- \property_ref:nn 111, 115
- \property_ref:nnn 42, 114, 119, 181, 190, 239, 240, 325, 460, 471, 505, 1319, 1323

\Providecommand 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 69, 70, 321

\ProvidesExplFile 3

\ProvidesExplPackage 3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 7, 7, 20, 31, 1490

Q	
<code>\quad</code>	233, 234
quark commands:	
<code>\q_no_value</code>	606, 616, 662, 667, 689, 694
<code>\quark_if_no_value:N</code>	132, 178, 199, 215, 269, 300, 609, 620
<code>\quark_if_no_value_p:N</code>	549, 550, 620, 621, 698, 699
<code>\q_stop</code>	259, 292, 328
R	
<code>raw_␣(mc-key)</code>	80, 238, 384
<code>ref (key)</code>	1, 740, 915
<code>\RemoveFromHook</code>	34, 525, 526
<code>\renewcommand</code>	605, 606
<code>\RenewDocumentCommand</code>	8
<code>\RequirePackage</code>	40, 274, 277, 283, 286, 565
<code>\rlap</code>	440
<code>role_␣(rolemap-key)</code>	179, 752
role commands:	
<code>role_get_parent_child_rule</code>	967
<code>role-MC-child-forbidden</code>	104
<code>role-missing</code>	20, 86
<code>role-namespace_␣(rolemap-key)</code> .	179, 752
<code>role-parent-child-check</code>	90
<code>role-parent-child-forbidden</code>	111
<code>role-parent-child-result</code>	20, 92
<code>role-parent-child-unresolved</code>	164
<code>role-remapping</code>	20, 213
<code>role-struct-parent-child-forbidden</code> .	94
<code>role-tag</code>	20, 215
<code>role-unknown</code>	20, 86
<code>role-unknown-NS</code>	20, 86
<code>role-unknown-tag</code>	20, 86
<code>role/new-attribute_␣(setup-key)</code>	113, 1499
<code>role/new-tag_␣(setup-key)</code>	752
<code>root-AF (key)</code>	1, 1054
<code>root-supplemental-file (key)</code>	1076
S	
<code>\selectfont</code>	6
seq commands:	
<code>\seq_clear:N</code>	337, 448
<code>\seq_const_from_clist:Nn</code>	39, 52
<code>\seq_count:N</code>	22, 25, 58,
349, 462, 1537, 1539, 1541, 1565, 1591	
<code>\seq_get:NN</code>	723, 736
<code>\seq_get:NNTF</code>	487, 584, 1157, 1284, 1292
<code>\seq_gpop:NN</code>	1277
<code>\seq_gpop:NNTF</code>	106, 1278
<code>\seq_gpop_left:NN</code>	325
<code>\seq_gpush:Nn</code>	13, 15, 89, 96, 1164, 1170
<code>\seq_gput_left:Nn</code> ..	42, 143, 291, 329
<code>\seq_gput_right:Nn</code>	37, 142, 146, 152, 254, 275, 314, 468
<code>\seq_gset_eq:NN</code>	159, 221, 344
<code>\seq_if_empty:N</code>	200, 456
<code>\seq_item:Nn</code>	59, 116, 118, 125, 129, 136, 140,
144, 366, 373, 386, 491, 493, 500,	
712, 713, 728, 729, 775, 776, 779, 780	
<code>\seq_log:N</code>	175, 199, 249, 394, 555, 570
<code>\seq_map_function:NN</code>	274
<code>\seq_map_indexed_inline:Nn</code>	446, 459
<code>\seq_map_inline:Nn</code>	289, 338, 1527, 1567
<code>\seq_new:N</code>	12, 14, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19,
21, 22, 24, 73, 74, 140, 163, 1129, 1498	
<code>\seq_pop_left:NN</code>	455, 457, 458
<code>\seq_put_right:Nn</code>	339
<code>\seq_remove_all:Nn</code>	342
<code>\seq_set_eq:NN</code>	207, 208
<code>\seq_set_from_clist:NN</code> ...	1522, 1558
<code>\seq_set_from_clist:Nn</code>	87, 90, 196, 216, 443, 454
<code>\seq_set_map_e:NNn</code>	1523, 1559
<code>\seq_set_split:Nnn</code>	51,
103, 705, 709, 721, 725, 772, 774, 776	
<code>\seq_show:N</code>	60, 146, 216, 217, 250, 340,
341, 343, 478, 1174, 1242, 1263, 1273	
<code>\seq_use:Nn</code>	50, 110, 111, 205, 233, 234, 401, 1538
Setup keys:	
<code>activate-all (deprecated)</code>	1
<code>activate-mc (deprecated)</code>	1
<code>activate-struct (deprecated)</code>	1
<code>activate-tree (deprecated)</code>	1
<code>activate/all</code>	1, 218
<code>activate/mc</code>	1, 218
<code>activate/softhyphen</code>	1, 252
<code>activate/spaces</code>	1
<code>activate/struct</code>	1, 218
<code>activate/struct-dest</code>	1, 218
<code>activate/tagunmarked</code>	1, 249
<code>activate/tree</code>	1, 218
<code>catalog-supplemental-file</code>	1093
<code>debug/log</code>	1, 236
<code>debug/show</code>	235
<code>debug/uncompress</code>	236
<code>log (deprecated)</code>	236
<code>no-struct-dest (deprecated)</code>	1
<code>page/taborder</code>	1, 254
<code>root-AF</code>	1, 1054
<code>root-supplemental-file</code>	1076
<code>taborder (deprecated)</code>	1, 254
<code>tagunmarked (deprecated)</code>	1, 249

uncompress (deprecated) [236](#)
 shipout commands:
 \g_shipout_readonly_int
 [128](#), [130](#), [241](#), [396](#), [533](#)
 show-kids [20](#), [64](#)
 show-spaces_□(deprecated) [202](#), [6](#)
 show-struct [20](#), [64](#)
 \ShowTagging [17](#), [40](#), [125](#)
 skip commands:
 \skip_horizontal:n [77](#)
 \c_zero_skip [77](#)
 socket commands:
 \socket_assign_plug:nn
 [200](#), [204](#), [205](#),
 [209](#), [210](#), [518](#), [519](#), [535](#), [739](#), [813](#), [814](#)
 \socket_if_exist:nTF [733](#)
 \socket_new:nn . [183](#), [184](#), [446](#), [447](#), [700](#)
 \socket_new_plug:nnn
 [185](#), [449](#), [468](#), [501](#), [701](#), [717](#)
 \socket_use:n [28](#), [76](#), [520](#), [522](#), [529](#), [533](#)
 \socket_use:nn
 .. [81](#), [205](#), [341](#), [793](#), [1223](#), [1340](#), [1385](#)
 \socket_use:nnn [86](#)
 \socket_use:nw [97](#)
 \socket_use_expandable:n [92](#)
 \socket_use_expandable:nw .. [66](#), [112](#)
 stash (key) [1](#), [740](#)
 stash_□(mc-key) [81](#), [182](#)
 str commands:
 \str_case:nnTF [46](#), [661](#), [1181](#)
 \str_const:Nn [59](#)
 \str_if_eq:nnTF [117](#), [127](#), [500](#), [586](#), [673](#)
 \str_if_eq_p:nn [310](#), [491](#), [493](#)
 \str_if_exist:NTF [444](#), [584](#), [627](#)
 \str_new:N [71](#)
 \str_set_convert:Nnnn [104](#), [261](#), [296](#),
 [398](#), [415](#), [797](#), [809](#), [823](#), [839](#), [854](#), [927](#)
 \str_use:N [67](#), [272](#), [309](#)
 \c_tilde_str [57](#), [59](#)
 \string [15](#), [16](#)
 struct-faulty-nesting [20](#), [32](#)
 struct-label-unknown [20](#), [38](#)
 struct-missing-tag [20](#), [35](#)
 struct-no-objnum [20](#), [24](#)
 struct-orphan [20](#), [25](#)
 struct-Ref-unknown [42](#)
 struct-show-closing [20](#), [40](#)
 struct-stack_□(show-key) [40](#), [246](#)
 struct-unknown [20](#), [22](#)
 struct-used-twice [20](#), [36](#)
 Structure keys:
 actualtext [1](#), [740](#)
 AF [1](#), [938](#)
 AFinline [1](#), [938](#)
 AFinline-o [1](#), [938](#)
 AFref [1](#), [938](#)
 alt [1](#), [740](#)
 attribute [1](#), [1551](#)
 attribute-class [1](#), [1517](#)
 E [1](#), [740](#), [915](#)
 firstkid [1](#), [740](#)
 label [1](#), [740](#)
 lang [1](#), [740](#)
 mathml [1](#), [938](#)
 parent [1](#), [740](#)
 phoneme [740](#)
 ref [1](#), [740](#), [915](#)
 stash [1](#), [740](#)
 tag [1](#), [740](#)
 texsource [1](#), [938](#)
 title [1](#), [740](#)
 title-o [1](#), [740](#)
 \SuspendTagging [43](#)
 sys commands:
 \c_sys_backend_str [46](#)
 \c_sys_engine_str [12](#), [14](#)
 \sys_if_engine luatex:TF
 [21](#), [36](#), [49](#), [71](#),
 [83](#), [84](#), [105](#), [187](#), [266](#), [361](#), [391](#), [493](#), [501](#)
 \sys_if_engine luatex_p: [787](#)
 \sys_if_engine pdftex:TF ... [26](#), [111](#)
 \sys_if_output_pdf:TF [11](#), [28](#), [113](#)
 sys-no-interwordspace [20](#), [222](#)

T

tabsorder (deprecated) (key) [1](#), [254](#)
 tag (key) [1](#), [740](#)
 tag_□(mc-key) [80](#), [238](#), [384](#)
 tag_□(rolemap-key) [179](#), [752](#)
 tag commands:
 \tag_check_benchmark_on: [617](#)
 \tag_check_child:nn [719](#), [721](#)
 \tag_check_child:nnTF [179](#), [719](#)
 \tag_get:n [17](#), [81](#), [110](#),
 [111](#), [128](#), [129](#), [89](#), [92](#), [229](#), [229](#), [539](#), [762](#)
 \tag_if_active: [233](#), [238](#)
 \tag_if_active:TF [17](#), [18](#), [230](#), [231](#), [540](#)
 \tag_if_active_p: [17](#), [230](#), [1013](#)
 \tag_if_box_tagged:N [257](#)
 \tag_if_box_tagged:NTF [17](#), [256](#)
 \tag_if_box_tagged_p:N [17](#), [256](#)
 \tag_mc_add_missing_to_stream:Nn
 .. [80](#), [66](#), [189](#), [225](#), [574](#), [578](#), [590](#), [593](#)
 \tag_mc_artifact_group_begin:n .
 [79](#), [60](#), [60](#), [63](#)
 \tag_mc_artifact_group_end:
 [79](#), [60](#), [61](#), [71](#)

\tag_mc_begin:n 10, 79, 25, 66, 114, 169,
169, 295, 295, 299, 305, 428, 439,
465, 497, 658, 686, 738, 804, 822,
840, 857, 874, 893, 916, 939, 962, 984
\tag_mc_begin_pop:n 79, 76,
80, 81, 102, 667, 697, 770, 813, 831,
849, 866, 883, 907, 930, 953, 976, 998
\tag_mc_end: 79, 31, 75, 93,
216, 216, 295, 296, 359, 365, 430,
441, 507, 664, 693, 743, 811, 829,
847, 864, 881, 905, 928, 951, 974, 996
\tag_mc_end_push: 79, 65,
80, 80, 83, 652, 679, 756, 802, 820,
838, 855, 872, 891, 914, 937, 960, 982
\tag_mc_if_in: 82, 233
\tag_mc_if_in:TF 79, 42, 68, 226
\tag_mc_if_in_p: 79, 68, 226
\tag_mc_new_stream:n 80, 17, 17, 67, 67
\tag_mc_reset_box:N 79, 79, 79, 228, 228
\tag_mc_use:n 79, 36, 36, 36, 38
\l_tag_para_attr_class_tl . 389, 391
\tag_resume:n
... 7, 73, 157, 193, 206, 216, 663, 692
\tag_socket_use:n .. 42, 43, 62, 72, 73
\tag_socket_use:nn . 42, 43, 63, 72, 78
\tag_socket_use:nnn . 42, 43, 64, 72, 83
\tag_socket_use_expandable:n ...
..... 42, 43, 65, 72, 89
\tag_spacechar_off: ... 81, 81, 86, 115
\tag_spacechar_on: ... 81, 82, 98, 119
\tag_start: 7, 157, 168, 181, 210
\tag_start:n 7, 157, 206, 214, 216
\tag_stop: ... 7, 52, 157, 159, 180, 209
\tag_stop:n 7, 157, 192, 213, 215
\tag_struct_begin:n 110, 48,
456, 463, 481, 491, 685, 737, 762,
803, 821, 839, 856, 873, 892, 915,
938, 961, 983, 1113, 1113, 1117, 1118
\tag_struct_end: 110,
26, 53, 509, 513, 694, 744, 767, 812,
830, 848, 865, 882, 906, 929, 952,
975, 997, 1113, 1114, 1269, 1270, 1309
\tag_struct_end:n ... 110, 1115, 1306
\tag_struct_gput:nnn
.... 111, 921, 1405, 1405, 1407, 1415
\tag_struct_gput_ref:nnn 111
\tag_struct_insert_annot:nn
..... 110, 149, 904,
927, 950, 973, 995, 1475, 1475, 1484
\tag_struct_object_ref:n
. 110, 887, 900, 911, 1398, 1399, 1403
\tag_struct_parent_int:
.... 110, 149, 897, 904, 920, 927,
943, 950, 966, 973, 988, 995, 1475, 1485
\tag_struct_use:n
..... 110, 111, 58, 1312, 1312, 1314
\tag_struct_use_num:n
..... 110, 1353, 1353, 1355
\tag_suspend:n
... 7, 68, 157, 182, 192, 215, 659, 687
\tag_tool:n 39, 13, 13, 14, 16, 20
tag internal commands:
__tag_activate_mark_space 557
\g__tag_active_mc_bool
..... 40, 82, 221, 228, 243, 274
\l__tag_active_mc_bool
.... 88, 164, 174, 188, 199, 246, 274
\l__tag_active_socket_bool
..... 75, 80, 85,
88, 91, 96, 111, 165, 175, 189, 200, 293
\g__tag_active_space_bool
..... 13, 56, 61, 82
\g__tag_active_struct_bool
.... 82, 223, 230, 242, 284, 307, 484
\l__tag_active_struct_bool
.... 88, 163, 173, 187, 198, 245, 284
\g__tag_active_struct_dest_bool
..... 82, 227, 234, 306
\g__tag_active_tree_bool
.... 9, 68, 82, 222, 229, 244, 351, 389
__tag_add_missing_mcs:Nn
..... 94, 167, 167, 219
__tag_add_missing_mcs_to_-
stream:Nn . 65, 65, 66, 189, 189, 225
\g__tag_attr_class_used_prop ...
..... 291, 293, 1493, 1533
\g__tag_attr_class_used_seq 289, 1498
\g__tag_attr_entries_prop
295, 1493, 1501, 1529, 1569, 1574, 1578
__tag_attr_new_entry:nn
... 673, 1499, 1499, 1505, 1510, 1514
\g__tag_attr_objref_prop
..... 1493, 1573, 1580, 1585
\l__tag_attr_value_tl 1493,
1563, 1582, 1587, 1589, 1593, 1597
__tag_backend_create_bdc_node .. 436
__tag_backend_create_bmc_node .. 407
__tag_backend_create_emc_node .. 378
__tag_check_add_tag_role:nn ...
..... 129, 332, 332
__tag_check_add_tag_role:nnn ..
..... 169, 351
__tag_check_benchmark_tic: . 356,
360, 364, 368, 372, 376, 380, 615, 621

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> __tag_check_benchmark_toc: . 358, 362, 366, 370, 374, 378, 382, 616, 622 __tag_check_forbidden_parent_-child:nmn 120, 120, 134, 171 __tag_check_if_active_mc: 272 __tag_check_if_active_mc:TF 85, 104, 171, 191, 218, 271, 301, 307, 361, 367 __tag_check_if_active_struct: . 282 __tag_check_if_active_struct:TF 40, 271, 1120, 1121, 1274, 1275, 1308, 1316, 1357, 1478 __tag_check_if_mc_in_galley: . . 481 __tag_check_if_mc_in_galley:TF 209, 230 __tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing: 487 __tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing:TF 112, 218, 235, 487 __tag_check_if_mc_tmb_missing_-p: 487 __tag_check_if_mc_tme_missing: 498 __tag_check_if_mc_tme_missing:TF 155, 222, 239, 498 __tag_check_if_mc_tme_missing_-p: 498 __tag_check_info_closing_-struct:n 309, 309, 317, 1280 __tag_check_init_mc_used: 411, 411, 414, 420 __tag_check_mc_if_nested: 174, 312, 370, 370 __tag_check_mc_if_open: 220, 370, 371, 378 __tag_check_mc_in_galley:TF . . . 481 __tag_check_mc_in_galley_p: . . . 481 __tag_check_mc_pushed_popped:nn 90, 97, 110, 113, 118, 385, 385 __tag_check_mc_tag:N 193, 330, 397, 397 __tag_check_mc_used:n 145, 268, 416, 416 \g__tag_check_mc_used_intarray 411, 421, 423, 426 __tag_check_no_open_struct: 318, 318, 1282, 1290 __tag_check_para_begin_show:nn 423, 464, 496 __tag_check_para_end_show:nn 434, 508 __tag_check_show_MCID_by_page: 435, 435 __tag_check_struct_forbidden_-parent_child:nnn . . . 137, 163, 646 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> __tag_check_struct_used:n 322, 322, 1321 __tag_check_structure_has_tag:n 292, 292, 1154 __tag_check_structure_tag:N 302, 302, 714, 737, 788 __tag_check_timeout_v:n . . . 110, 111, 114, 149, 157, 164, 202, 211, 224, 224, 241, 474, 490, 506, 577, 588 __tag_check_unresolved_parent_-child:nmn 169, 169 \g__tag_css_bool 1009, 1010, 1013, 1024 \g__tag_css_prop 1001, 1002, 1015, 1028, 1029, 1031, 1032 __tag_debug_mc_begin_ignore:n 354, 516 __tag_debug_mc_begin_insert:n 309, 509 __tag_debug_mc_end_ignore: 379, 530 __tag_debug_mc_end_insert: 369, 523 __tag_debug_struct_begin_-ignore:n 558, 1267 __tag_debug_struct_begin_-insert:n 550, 1264 __tag_debug_struct_end_check:n 580, 1308 __tag_debug_struct_end_ignore: 573, 1303 __tag_debug_struct_end_insert: 565, 1301 __tag_exclude_headfoot_begin: 647, 708, 709 __tag_exclude_headfoot_end: 661, 710, 711 __tag_exclude_struct_headfoot_-begin:n 674, 715, 716 __tag_exclude_struct_headfoot_-end: 690, 717, 718 __tag_fakespace 491 __tag_fakespace: 71, 73, 318 __tag_finish_structure: 13, 16, 348, 349 \l__tag_get_child_tmpa_tl 59, 587, 592, 659, 661, 671, 674, 685, 1322, 1326, 1328, 1334, 1344 \l__tag_get_child_tmpb_tl 59, 588, 593, 660, 672 \l__tag_get_child_tmpc_tl 59, 145, 157, 159 __tag_get_data_mc_counter: 9, 9 __tag_get_data_mc_tag: 237, 237, 293, 293 __tag_get_data_struct_counter: 565, 566
--	--

__tag_get_data_struct_id: [554](#), [554](#)
 __tag_get_data_struct_num: [559](#), [560](#)
 __tag_get_data_struct_tag: [546](#), [546](#)
 __tag_get_mathsubtype [302](#)
 __tag_get_mc_abs_cnt:
 [14](#), [15](#), [19](#), [20](#), [102](#),
 [137](#), [166](#), [177](#), [183](#), [210](#), [246](#), [254](#),
 [272](#), [286](#), [307](#), [321](#), [331](#), [374](#), [382](#), [402](#)
 __tag_get_mc_cnt_type_tag [296](#)
 __tag_get_num_from [321](#)
 \l__tag_get_parent_tmpa_tl
 . [59](#), [127](#), [132](#), [136](#), [139](#), [149](#), [152](#),
 [162](#), [165](#), [175](#), [582](#), [590](#), [603](#), [609](#),
 [613](#), [616](#), [683](#), [685](#), [727](#), [730](#), [740](#), [743](#)
 \l__tag_get_parent_tmpb_tl
 [59](#), [150](#),
 [153](#), [163](#), [166](#), [175](#), [583](#), [591](#), [604](#),
 [620](#), [624](#), [627](#), [684](#), [728](#), [731](#), [741](#), [744](#)
 \l__tag_get_parent_tmpc_tl
 [59](#), [144](#), [152](#), [154](#)
 __tag_get_tag_from [340](#)
 \l__tag_get_tmpc_tl [59](#),
 [199](#), [204](#), [222](#), [224](#), [225](#), [236](#), [238](#),
 [239](#), [1201](#), [1207](#), [1424](#), [1426](#), [1430](#), [1436](#)
 __tag_gincr_para_begin_int: ...
 [341](#), [345](#), [363](#), [379](#), [462](#), [489](#)
 __tag_gincr_para_end_int:
 [341](#), [353](#), [371](#), [381](#), [505](#)
 __tag_gincr_para_main_begin_
 int: .. [341](#), [341](#), [359](#), [378](#), [455](#), [480](#)
 __tag_gincr_para_main_end_int:
 [341](#), [349](#), [367](#), [380](#), [512](#)
 __tag_headfoot_tagged_begin:n .
 [749](#), [780](#), [781](#)
 __tag_headfoot_tagged_end:
 [765](#), [782](#), [783](#)
 __tag_hook_kernel_after_foot: .
 [616](#), [624](#), [641](#), [711](#), [718](#), [725](#), [783](#)
 __tag_hook_kernel_after_head: .
 [614](#), [622](#), [633](#), [710](#), [717](#), [724](#), [782](#)
 __tag_hook_kernel_before_foot:
 [615](#), [623](#), [639](#), [709](#), [716](#), [723](#), [781](#)
 __tag_hook_kernel_before_head:
 [613](#), [621](#), [631](#), [708](#), [715](#), [722](#), [780](#)
 \g__tag_in_mc_bool [16](#),
 [18](#), [175](#), [221](#), [228](#), [313](#), [372](#), [655](#),
 [656](#), [670](#), [682](#), [683](#), [700](#), [759](#), [760](#), [773](#)
 __tag_insert_bdc_node [436](#)
 __tag_insert_bmc_node [407](#)
 __tag_insert_emc_node [378](#)
 __tag_log [224](#)
 \l__tag_loglevel_int
 [81](#), [125](#), [132](#), [170](#), [173](#), [237](#),
 [240](#), [243](#), [244](#), [245](#), [311](#), [341](#), [360](#),
 [388](#), [391](#), [418](#), [511](#), [512](#), [518](#), [525](#),
 [532](#), [552](#), [560](#), [562](#), [567](#), [575](#), [582](#), [601](#)
 __tag_mark_spaces [496](#)
 __tag_mc_artifact_begin_marks:n
 [23](#), [45](#), [81](#), [327](#)
 \l__tag_mc_artifact_bool
 [20](#), [176](#), [185](#), [196](#), [222](#), [323](#)
 \l__tag_mc_artifact_type_tl
 [19](#), [189](#), [193](#), [197](#),
 [201](#), [205](#), [209](#), [213](#), [217](#), [325](#), [327](#), [344](#)
 __tag_mc_bdc:nn [234](#), [237](#), [283](#)
 __tag_mc_bdc_mcid:n ... [123](#), [239](#), [255](#)
 __tag_mc_bdc_mcid:nn
 [239](#), [240](#), [257](#), [262](#)
 __tag_mc_bdc_shipout:nn .. [238](#), [248](#)
 __tag_mc_begin_marks:nn
 [23](#), [23](#), [44](#), [80](#), [334](#)
 __tag_mc_bmc:n [234](#), [235](#), [279](#)
 __tag_mc_bmc_artifact: [277](#), [277](#), [290](#)
 __tag_mc_bmc_artifact:n [277](#), [281](#), [291](#)
 \l__tag_mc_botmarks_seq
 [94](#), [21](#), [90](#), [111](#),
 [161](#), [208](#), [216](#), [217](#), [221](#), [234](#), [483](#), [500](#)
 __tag_mc_check_parent_child:n .
 [122](#), [122](#), [181](#), [207](#), [343](#)
 __tag_mc_disable_marks: [78](#), [78](#)
 __tag_mc_emc: [158](#), [234](#), [236](#), [374](#)
 __tag_mc_end_marks: .. [23](#), [63](#), [82](#), [375](#)
 \l__tag_mc_firstmarks_seq
 [94](#), [21](#), [87](#), [110](#), [196](#), [199](#),
 [200](#), [207](#), [208](#), [216](#), [233](#), [483](#), [491](#), [493](#)
 \g__tag_mc_footnote_marks_seq ... [14](#)
 __tag_mc_get_marks: . [84](#), [84](#), [208](#), [229](#)
 __tag_mc_handle_artifact:N
 [119](#), [277](#), [285](#), [325](#)
 __tag_mc_handle_mc_label:n
 [27](#), [27](#), [200](#), [337](#)
 __tag_mc_handle_mcid:nn
 [239](#), [260](#), [265](#), [331](#)
 __tag_mc_handle_stash:n [50](#), [140](#),
 [142](#), [143](#), [168](#), [210](#), [266](#), [266](#), [276](#), [346](#)
 __tag_mc_if_in: [68](#), [82](#), [226](#), [233](#)
 __tag_mc_if_in:TF [68](#), [87](#), [226](#), [372](#), [380](#)
 __tag_mc_if_in_p: [68](#), [226](#)
 __tag_mc_insert_extra_tmb:n ...
 [108](#), [108](#), [171](#)
 __tag_mc_insert_extra_tme:n ...
 [108](#), [153](#), [172](#)
 __tag_mc_insert_mcid_kids:n ...
 [131](#), [131](#), [150](#), [327](#)
 __tag_mc_insert_mcid_single_
 kids:n [131](#), [136](#), [328](#)
 \l__tag_mc_key_label_tl
 . [23](#), [198](#), [200](#), [316](#), [334](#), [335](#), [337](#), [424](#)

\l__tag_mc_key_properties_tl ...
. 23, 177, 251, 266, 267, 281, 301,
302, 333, 394, 403, 404, 409, 420, 421
\l__tag_mc_key_stash_bool
..... 20, 31, 40, 184, 203, 339
\g__tag_mc_key_tag_tl 19, 23,
180, 225, 237, 243, 293, 315, 373, 390
\l__tag_mc_key_tag_tl 23, 179, 193,
195, 224, 242, 314, 330, 332, 334, 389
\l__tag_mc_lang_tl
..... 22, 185, 190, 316, 321
__tag_mc_lua_set_mc_type_attr:n
..... 83, 83, 107, 195
__tag_mc_lua_unset_mc_type_-
attr: 83, 109, 223
\g__tag_mc_main_marks_seq 14
\g__tag_mc_marks 13,
25, 34, 47, 54, 65, 71, 88, 91, 197, 217
\g__tag_mc_multicol_marks_seq ... 14
\g__tag_mc_parenttree_prop
..... 17, 18, 103, 184, 272
\l__tag_mc_ref_abbrevpage_tl 11
__tag_mc_set_label_used:n 31, 31, 51
\g__tag_mc_stack_seq
..... 18, 89, 96, 106, 394
__tag_mc_store:nmn .. 93, 93, 107, 134
\l__tag_mc_tmpa_tl 12
g__tag_MCID_abs_int 7
\g__tag_mode_lua_bool 35, 36,
135, 146, 248, 272, 281, 314, 335,
569, 595, 650, 665, 677, 695, 754, 768
__tag_new_output_prop_handler:n
..... 92, 102, 126, 1127
__tag_pairs_prop 241
\l__tag_para_attr_class_tl
..... 322, 391, 494
\g__tag_para_begin_int
..... 322, 347, 365, 429, 553, 558
\l__tag_para_bool
..... 322, 396, 405, 412, 418,
451, 470, 503, 605, 606, 649, 676, 753
\g__tag_para_end_int
..... 322, 355, 373, 440, 553, 559
\l__tag_para_flattened_bool
..... 322, 401, 408, 421, 453, 478, 510
\l__tag_para_main_attr_class_tl
..... 322, 484
\g__tag_para_main_begin_int
..... 322, 343, 361, 544, 549
\g__tag_para_main_end_int
..... 322, 351, 369, 544, 550
__tag_para_main_store_struct: .
..... 383, 383, 460, 486
\g__tag_para_main_struct_tl 322, 385
\l__tag_para_main_tag_tl
..... 322, 400, 407, 420, 458, 483
\l__tag_para_show_bool
..... 322, 397, 398, 413, 426, 437
\l__tag_para_tag_default_tl 322
\l__tag_para_tag_tl
..... 322, 399, 406, 414, 419, 463, 493
\l__tag_parent_child_check_tl ..
..... 156, 157, 169, 172, 500,
636, 637, 644, 647, 733, 734, 746, 748
__tag_parenttree_add_objr:nm ..
..... 163, 163, 509, 537
\l__tag_parenttree_content_tl ..
..... 170, 195, 207, 227, 235, 256, 259
\g__tag_parenttree_objr_tl
..... 162, 165, 256
__tag_pdf_name_e:n 122, 122
__tag_pdf_object_ref 466
__tag_prop_gput:Nnn
..... 9, 29, 89, 98, 111, 114,
120, 121, 128, 132, 138, 141, 146,
149, 149, 201, 205, 217, 220, 282,
285, 314, 315, 384, 1327, 1463, 1470
__tag_prop_item:Nn ... 9, 52, 138, 145
__tag_prop_new:N 9, 9,
11, 19, 24, 32, 125, 138, 138, 152, 1125
__tag_prop_new_linked:N
..... 15, 17, 138, 139
__tag_prop_show:N 9, 65, 138, 147, 155
\c__tag_property_mc_clist .. 79, 247
__tag_property_record:nm
..... 29, 107, 107, 116, 243, 495, 746
__tag_property_ref_lastpage:nm
. 83, 117, 117, 160, 174, 177, 439, 453
\c__tag_property_struct_clist 79, 748
\l__tag_Ref_tmpa_tl 63
g__tag_role/RoleMap_dict 18
\g__tag_role_add_mathml_bool ...
..... 73, 265, 762, 829
__tag_role_add_tag:nm
..... 127, 127, 153, 280, 365, 800
__tag_role_add_tag:nmnn
..... 167, 167, 226, 312, 805
__tag_role_alloctag:nmn 81,
85, 95, 107, 117, 126, 141, 184, 277, 308
__tag_role_check_parent_-
child:nmnnN 151,
164, 589, 590, 592, 640, 717, 729, 742
\l__tag_role_debug_prop 11
__tag_role_get:nmNN 154,
156, 164, 227, 229, 253, 730, 781, 1165
__tag_role_get_parent_child_-
rule:nmN
..... 195, 500, 503, 541, 589, 623, 701

\g__tag_role_index_prop
..... 180, 10, 448, 456, 468,
469, 470, 475, 481, 483, 484, 485,
488, 490, 491, 495, 546, 547, 599, 609
\g__tag_role_NS_<ns>_class_prop 180
\g__tag_role_NS_<ns>_prop 180
\g__tag_role_NS_mathml_prop 267, 486
__tag_role_NS_new:nnn
. 182, 20, 22, 30, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 80
\g__tag_role_NS_prop
..... 180, 9, 26, 56, 199, 326, 344, 786
\g__tag_role_parent_child_-
intarray 390, 397, 406, 421, 425, 555
__tag_role_read_namespace:n 337,
337, 341, 342, 343, 345, 347, 349, 350
__tag_role_read_namespace:nn ..
..... 318, 318, 339, 348
__tag_role_read_namespace_-
line:nw 255, 259, 292, 328
\l__tag_role_role_namespace_-
tmpa_tl 12,
757, 778, 783, 787, 790, 794, 809
\l__tag_role_role_tmpa_tl
..... 12, 756, 776, 782, 802, 808
\g__tag_role_rolemap_prop
..... 180, 18, 144, 146, 149, 158,
214, 217, 220, 269, 272, 385, 604, 614
\c__tag_role_rule_checkparent_tl
..... 157, 173, 637, 734
\c__tag_role_rules_num_prop
..... 391, 514, 564
\c__tag_role_rules_prop 391, 395, 419
\l__tag_role_tag_namespace_tmpa_-
tl 12, 755, 807
\l__tag_role_tag_namespace_tmpb_-
tl 14
\l__tag_role_tag_namespace_tmpb_-
tl% 12
\l__tag_role_tag_tmpa_tl
..... 12, 754, 775, 801, 806
\g__tag_role_tags_class_prop ...
..... 180, 8, 90, 99, 112, 121, 137, 268
\g__tag_role_tags_NS_prop
180, 7, 88, 97, 110, 119, 130, 304,
339, 383, 405, 703, 719, 770, 781, 1296
\l__tag_role_tmpa_seq 12
\l__tag_role_update_bool
..... 208, 255, 256, 264, 344, 346
\c__tag_role_userNS_id_str
..... 181, 59, 80
\g__tag_root_default_tl 285
\g__tag_saved_in_mc_bool
..... 646, 655, 670, 682, 700, 759, 773
__tag_seq_gput_left:Nn
..... 9, 40, 143, 151, 286
__tag_seq_gput_right:Nn 9,
35, 138, 142, 150, 249, 259, 270, 309
__tag_seq_item:Nn ... 9, 47, 138, 144
__tag_seq_new:N
..... 9, 9, 22, 127, 138, 140, 153, 1128
__tag_seq_show:N 9, 58, 138, 146, 154
__tag_show_spacemark 477
\l__tag_showspaces_bool ... 7, 16, 17
\g__tag_softhyphen_bool 94, 252
__tag_space_chars_shipout 589
__tag_start_para_ints:
..... 176, 201, 357, 357
__tag_stop_para_ints:
..... 166, 190, 357, 376
__tag_store_parent_child_-
rule:nnn 391, 393, 417, 462
g__tag_struct_1_prop 124
__tag_struct_add_AF:nn
..... 951, 968, 988, 995, 1015, 1060
__tag_struct_add_inline_AF:nn .
..... 940, 967, 1029, 1033, 1040, 1050
\l__tag_struct_addkid_tl 86, 790, 1238
\g__tag_struct_AFobj_int 938, 946, 949
__tag_struct_check_parent_-
child:nn 596, 596, 651, 687, 696, 1225
__tag_struct_checkparent_-
child_aux:nnnnN . 571, 572, 631, 639
\g__tag_struct_cont_mc_prop
..... 11, 95, 96, 98, 101, 262
\g__tag_struct_dest_num_prop 88, 896
\l__tag_struct_elem_stash_bool .
..... 85, 750, 1188, 1221, 1251
__tag_struct_exchange_kid_-
command:N 323, 323, 332, 363
__tag_struct_fill_kid_key:n ...
..... 136, 333, 333, 465
__tag_struct_format_P:nnN 427
__tag_struct_format_parentnum:nnN
..... 430, 430
__tag_struct_format_parentrole:nnN
..... 427, 428
__tag_struct_format_Ref 136
__tag_struct_format_Ref:nnN 434, 434
__tag_struct_format_rolemap:nnN
..... 427, 427
__tag_struct_format_tag:nnN 427, 429
__tag_struct_get_dict_content:nn
..... 138, 413, 413, 466
__tag_struct_get_id:n
. 96, 101, 114, 115, 166, 167, 472, 556

__tag_struct_get_role:nnNN 146, 159, 213, 213,
 232, 579, 584, 656, 668, 680, 724, 737
 __tag_struct_gput_data_attribute:nn
 1456, 1456
 __tag_struct_gput_data_ref:nn .
 1438, 1455
 __tag_struct_gput_data_ref_
 aux:nnn
 . . 1417, 1418, 1440, 1444, 1448, 1452
 __tag_struct_gput_data_ref_
 dest:nn 1446
 __tag_struct_gput_data_ref_
 label:nn 1442
 __tag_struct_gput_data_ref_
 num:nn 1450
 __tag_struct_insert_annot:nn . .
 480, 480, 1480
 __tag_struct_insert_annot_
 shipout:nnn 521, 521
 __tag_struct_kid_mc_gput_
 right:nn 233, 245, 246, 265, 269
 __tag_struct_kid_OBJR_gput_
 right:nnn 298, 298, 301, 322, 496, 524
 __tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_
 left:nn 282, 282, 283, 297
 __tag_struct_kid_struct_gput_
 right:nn
 266, 266, 267, 281, 1324, 1369
 g__tag_struct_kids_1_seq 124
 \g__tag_struct_label_num_prop . .
 84, 744, 883
 \l__tag_struct_lang_tl
 611, 1111, 1136, 1141
 __tag_struct_mcid_dict:n
 98, 101, 233, 252
 \c__tag_struct_null_tl 10, 367
 \g__tag_struct_objR_seq 8
 __tag_struct_output_prop_aux:nn
 92, 92, 106
 \l__tag_struct_parenttag_NS_tl . .
 76, 780, 783, 787, 1194
 \l__tag_struct_parenttag_tl
 76, 779, 782, 786, 788, 1194
 __tag_struct_prop_gput:nnn . 110,
 111, 112, 118, 129, 134, 139, 144,
 149, 156, 182, 186, 195, 201, 206,
 369, 382, 396, 802, 814, 828, 844,
 859, 867, 932, 954, 997, 1016, 1061,
 1132, 1138, 1143, 1175, 1190, 1203,
 1213, 1229, 1372, 1433, 1543, 1594
 \g__tag_struct_ref_by_dest_prop . 91
 __tag_struct_Ref_dest:nN . 873, 894
 __tag_struct_Ref_label:nN 873, 881
 __tag_struct_Ref_num:nN . . 873, 907
 __tag_struct_Ref_obj:nN . . 873, 873
 \g__tag_struct_roletag_NS_tl 76
 \l__tag_struct_roletag_NS_tl
 79, 1169, 1179, 1217
 \l__tag_struct_roletag_tl
 76, 1168, 1171, 1179, 1181, 1217
 __tag_struct_set_attribute:
 23, 37, 1173, 1287
 __tag_struct_set_tag_info:nnn
 177, 179, 193, 212, 1150
 \g__tag_struct_stack_current_tl
 . . 16, 29, 31, 38, 69, 75, 121, 148,
 154, 162, 208, 270, 274, 310, 344,
 551, 556, 562, 1172, 1236, 1240,
 1241, 1262, 1280, 1286, 1325, 1331,
 1337, 1343, 1370, 1376, 1382, 1388
 \l__tag_struct_stack_parent_
 tmpa_tl . . 16, 489, 498, 515, 760,
 1148, 1155, 1159, 1199, 1226, 1233,
 1237, 1239, 1242, 1254, 1255, 1263
 \g__tag_struct_stack_seq
 12, 22, 25, 488, 723,
 736, 1158, 1164, 1174, 1273, 1278, 1284
 \c__tag_struct_StructElem_
 entries_seq 39
 \c__tag_struct_StructTreeRoot_
 entries_seq 39
 \g__tag_struct_tag_NS_tl 76, 713,
 729, 732, 736, 1153, 1167, 1261, 1298
 \g__tag_struct_tag_stack_seq
 14, 50, 249,
 250, 555, 570, 584, 1170, 1277, 1292
 \g__tag_struct_tag_tl 76,
 179, 180, 183, 314, 315, 401, 402,
 712, 714, 728, 731, 735, 737, 1152,
 1166, 1171, 1294, 1296, 1338, 1383
 __tag_struct_use_check_parent_
 child:nn . 652, 652, 699, 1342, 1387
 __tag_struct_write_obj 136
 __tag_struct_write_obj:n
 151, 446, 446
 \l__tag_tag_stop_int 157, 161, 162,
 170, 171, 178, 185, 186, 195, 196, 204
 \g__tag_tagunmarked_bool 93, 249, 251
 \l__tag_tmp_unused_tl 62, 130, 297,
 304, 395, 398, 402, 405, 419, 422,
 703, 706, 719, 722, 770, 773, 788, 1569
 \l__tag_tmp_unused_tl\l__tag_
 tag_Ref_tmpa_tl 59
 \l__tag_tmpa_box
 59, 171, 177, 178, 182, 193, 194
 \l__tag_tmpa_clist
 59, 1521, 1522, 1555, 1556, 1558

<code>\l__tag_tmpa_int</code>	59, 90, 93, 98, 101, 105, 114, 430, 442, 444	<code>\g__tag_tree_openaction_struct_- tl</code>	32, 38, 57
<code>\l__tag_tmpa_prop</code>	59, 176, 189, 203, 205	<code>__tag_tree_parenttree_rerun_- msg:</code>	171, 220, 255
<code>\l__tag_tmpa_seq</code>	51, 58, 59, 59, 337, 339, 341, 342, 343, 344, 443, 446, 448, 454, 455, 457, 458, 459, 468, 478, 705, 709, 712, 713, 721, 725, 728, 729, 772, 774, 775, 776, 776, 779, 780, 1523, 1527, 1537, 1538, 1539, 1541, 1559, 1565, 1567, 1591	<code>__tag_tree_update_openaction:</code> ..	42, 75
<code>\l__tag_tmpa_str</code>	42, 43, 48, 59, 262, 267, 272, 297, 302, 309, 399, 404, 416, 421, 798, 805, 810, 817, 819, 820, 824, 825, 831, 840, 847, 855, 862, 928, 935	<code>__tag_tree_write_classmap:</code>	286, 286, 369
<code>\l__tag_tmpa_tl</code>	42, 43, 47, 49, 50, 51, 56, 59, 86, 88, 93, 94, 96, 98, 102, 106, 106, 108, 109, 113, 114, 116, 118, 119, 137, 138, 139, 141, 143, 144, 146, 177, 178, 180, 183, 184, 186, 191, 198, 199, 205, 205, 206, 209, 211, 214, 215, 220, 268, 269, 271, 275, 277, 288, 297, 299, 300, 302, 306, 308, 308, 314, 325, 326, 327, 329, 339, 358, 365, 367, 437, 445, 455, 456, 457, 458, 466, 468, 469, 470, 471, 475, 481, 483, 488, 514, 516, 525, 546, 549, 556, 564, 566, 575, 584, 588, 592, 599, 601, 604, 606, 620, 624, 645, 653, 655, 656, 658, 662, 667, 698, 702, 723, 725, 733, 735, 736, 738, 771, 772, 774, 784, 786, 950, 953, 1277, 1278, 1284, 1286, 1292, 1295, 1296, 1298, 1365, 1459, 1461, 1462, 1466, 1529, 1535, 1546, 1573	<code>__tag_tree_write_idtree:</code> ..	86, 361
<code>\l__tag_tmpb_box</code>	59, 172, 179, 180, 184, 186	<code>__tag_tree_write_namespaces:</code> ..	322, 322, 373
<code>\l__tag_tmpb_seq</code>	59, 1522, 1523, 1558, 1559	<code>__tag_tree_write_parenttree:</code> ..	246, 246, 357
<code>\l__tag_tmpb_tl</code>	192, 59, 89, 104, 118, 120, 295, 301, 450, 456, 462, 484, 490, 518, 547, 550, 556, 568, 609, 611, 614, 616, 621, 625, 672, 680, 682, 683, 685, 689, 694, 699, 703, 734, 736, 785, 787, 883, 887, 896, 900	<code>__tag_tree_write_rolemap:</code>	263, 263, 365
<code>\l__tag_tmpc_tl</code>	59, 485, 491	<code>__tag_tree_write_structelements:</code>	147, 147, 377
<code>__tag_tree_fill_parenttree:</code> ..	171, 172, 253	<code>__tag_tree_write_structtreeroot:</code>	126, 126, 381
<code>__tag_tree_final_checks:</code>	20, 20, 354	<code>\g__tag_unique_cnt_int</code>	95, 1082, 1086, 1089, 1099, 1103, 1107
<code>\g__tag_tree_id_pad_int</code> ..	78, 82, 172	<code>__tag_whatsits:</code>	36, 43, 48, 49, 52, 295, 296
<code>__tag_tree_lua_fill_parenttree:</code>	233, 233, 250	<code>tag-namespace_(rolemap-key)</code>	752
		<code>tag/check/parent-child</code>	183
		<code>tag/check/parent-child-end</code>	183
		<code>tag/struct/l internal commands:</code>	
		<code>__tag/struct/1</code>	31
		<code>tag/tree/namespaces internal commands:</code>	
		<code>__tag/tree/namespaces</code>	321
		<code>tag/tree/parenttree internal commands:</code>	
		<code>__tag/tree/parenttree</code>	154
		<code>tag/tree/rolemap internal commands:</code>	
		<code>__tag/tree/rolemap</code>	262
		<code>tagabspage</code>	8, 121
		<code>tagmcabs</code>	8, 121
		<code>\tagmcbegin</code>	39, 180, 22
		<code>\tagmccend</code>	39, 22
		<code>tagmccid</code>	8, 121
		<code>\tagmccifinTF</code>	39, 39
		<code>\tagmccuse</code>	39, 22
		<code>\tagpdfparaOff</code>	41, 602
		<code>\tagpdfparaOn</code>	41, 602
		<code>\tagpdfsetup</code>	39, 67, 113, 179, 6
		<code>\tagpdfsuppressmarks</code>	41, 607
		<code>\tagstart</code>	7, 181, 212
		<code>\tagstop</code>	7, 180, 211
		<code>tagstruct</code>	8, 121
		<code>\tagstructbegin</code>	40, 147, 179, 180, 45, 288
		<code>\tagstructend</code>	40, 45, 289
		<code>tagstructobj</code>	8, 121
		<code>\tagstructuse</code>	40, 45
		<code>\tagtool</code>	39, 13
		<code>tagunmarked (deprecated) (key)</code> ...	1, 249

test/lang _□ (setup-key)	609	\tl_if_empty:NNTF	43,
TeX and L ^A T _ε commands:			43, 109, 185, 198, 289, 307, 316,
\@M	168		335, 399, 656, 683, 772, 778, 820, 1136
\@bsphack	109	\tl_if_empty:nTF	
\@esphack	111	. . . . .	51, 69, 77, 89, 142, 196,
\@gobble	31, 55		210, 259, 262, 266, 279, 294, 295,
\@ifpackageloaded	22, 563		297, 334, 353, 413, 440, 603, 611,
\@kernel@after@foot	624		643, 670, 821, 837, 852, 943, 1013, 1027
\@kernel@after@head	622	\tl_if_empty_p:n	310, 789
\@kernel@before@foot	623	\tl_if_eq:NNTF	367, 483, 685
\@kernel@before@footins	571, 573	\tl_if_eq:NnTF	108
\@kernel@before@head	619, 621	\tl_if_eq:nnTF	212, 274, 278
\@kernel@tagsupport@makecol	575	\tl_if_exist:NNTF	259, 338, 389, 971
\@makecol	577, 588	\tl_if_head_eq_charcode:nNTF	49
\@maxdepth	181	\tl_if_in:nnTF	185
\@outputbox	578, 590	\tl_new:N	11, 12, 12,
\@secondoftwo	31, 55	13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 19, 20, 22, 23, 24,	
\c@chapter	360, 378	25, 26, 32, 33, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64,	
\c@page	577, 589	65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 76, 77, 78, 79,	
\on@line	475, 490, 506	80, 82, 86, 162, 170, 285, 330, 332,	
tex commands:		334, 336, 339, 340, 500, 981, 1111, 1496	
\tex_botmarks:D	91	\tl_put_left:Nn	622, 624
\tex_firstmarks:D	88	\tl_put_right:Nn	
\tex_kern:D	184	. . . . .	94, 104, 118, 195, 207, 226, 251,
\tex_marks:D	25, 34, 47, 54, 65, 71		256, 266, 267, 281, 297, 301, 302,
\tex_special:D	52		394, 403, 404, 409, 420, 421, 423,
\tex_splitbotmarks:D	217		432, 436, 441, 573, 575, 621, 623,
\tex_splitfirstmarks:D	197		875, 885, 898, 909, 1426, 1582, 1589
texsource (key)	1, 938	\tl_remove_once:Nn	1461, 1462
\the	577, 589	\tl_replace_once:Nnn	326
\tiny	429, 440	\tl_set:Nn	42, 81, 83, 86, 87,
title (key)	1, 740	118, 139, 160, 162, 180, 183, 189,	
title-o (key)	1, 740	193, 197, 201, 205, 209, 213, 217,	
tl commands:		224, 224, 225, 235, 238, 239, 242,	
\c_empty_tl	365, 385	243, 244, 249, 250, 271, 275, 302,	
\c_space_tl		306, 309, 316, 333, 335, 337, 365,	
.	55, 56, 58, 60, 98, 100, 104,	389, 391, 401, 437, 508, 516, 518,	
116, 167, 191, 197, 198, 216, 236,		552, 560, 566, 568, 601, 606, 611,	
238, 240, 259, 299, 406, 423, 443,		616, 629, 645, 655, 658, 662, 667,	
471, 577, 589, 877, 887, 900, 911,		672, 682, 685, 689, 694, 707, 760,	
978, 1254, 1337, 1382, 1466, 1538, 1584		775, 776, 779, 780, 786, 787, 790,	
\tl_clear:N		790, 794, 1148, 1322, 1430, 1535, 1563	
.	88, 89, 106, 177, 228, 229, 288, 415	\tl_set_eq:NN	179, 314
\tl_const:Nn	10	\tl_show:N	1236, 1237, 1587, 1593
\tl_count:n	79, 83, 172	\tl_tail:n	549
\tl_gput_left:Nn	1011	\tl_to_str:n	
\tl_gput_right:Nn	165, 976	. . . . .	33, 48, 149, 202, 217, 506, 539
\tl_gset:Nn	18,	\tl_trim_spaces:n	49
33, 38, 121, 225, 243, 286, 298, 331,		\tl_use:N	261, 959, 1002, 1021, 1066
373, 385, 390, 712, 713, 728, 729,		token commands:	
735, 736, 983, 1172, 1286, 1294, 1298		\token_to_str:N	577, 588
\tl_gset_eq:NN	180, 315	tree-mcid-index-wrong	20, 220
\tl_head:N	655, 682	tree-statistic	20, 54
		tree-struct-still-open	20, 47

U	
uncompress (deprecated) (key)	236
unittag _□ (deprecated)	394
\unskip	39
use commands:	
\use:N	67 , 229 , 608 , 1238
\use:n	41 , 366
\use_i:nn	
.	99 , 102 , 109 , 138 , 154 , 159 , 224 , 238 , 365 , 385 , 588 , 592 , 615 , 626 , 1295
\use_ii:nn	104 , 119 , 135 , 152 , 157 , 225 , 239 , 344 , 612 , 623
\use_none:n	81 , 103 , 118 , 224
\use_none:nn	80 , 1411
\UseExpandableTaggingSocket	43 , 70 , 72
\UseSocket	42 , 43
\UseTaggingSocket	42 , 43 , 69 , 72
V	
\vbadness	168 , 192
vbox commands:	
\ vbox_set_split_to_ht:NNn	194
\ vbox_set_to_ht:Nnn	170
\ vbox_unpack_drop:N	183
\vfuzz	169
viewer/startstructure _□ (setup-key)	34